

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION  
CENTER FOR BIOLOGICS EVALUATION AND RESEARCH

+ + + + +

VACCINES AND RELATED BIOLOGICAL PRODUCTS

ADVISORY COMMITTEE

+ + + + +

Monday, March 23, 1998

+ + + + +

Bethesda, Maryland

+ + + + +

The Advisory Committee met in the Embassy Ballroom of the Bethesda Ramada Hotel, 8400 Wisconsin Avenue, Bethesda, Maryland, at 7:45 a.m., Dr. Patricia Ferrieri, Chairperson, presiding.

PRESENT:

PATRICIA FERRIERI, M.D., Chairperson

ADAORA ADIMORA, M.D.

CAROLINE HALL, M.D.

KATHRYN EDWARDS, M.D.

MARY LOU CLEMENTS-MANN, M.D.

MARY ESTES, Ph.D.

HARRY GREENBERG, M.D.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

## CONSULTANTS AND GUEST SPEAKERS PRESENT:

ROBERT BREIMAN, M.D.

MARION DANIS, M.D.

THEODORE EICKHOFF, M.D.

JOSHUA FIERER, M.D.

STEPHEN HOFFMAN, M.D.

EDWIN KILBOURNE, M.D.

ERIC MINTZ, M.D.

CYNTHIA SEARS, M.D.

DIXIE SNIDER, JR., M.D., M.P.H.

HAROLD VANDERPOOL, Ph.D., Th.M.

ROBERT WEBSTER, Ph.D.

KATHERINE KNOWLES

MICHAEL APICELLA, M.D. (by telephone)

## COMMITTEE STAFF PRESENT:

NANCY CHERRY, Executive Secretary

## ALSO PRESENT:

DR. R. DOUGLAS PRATT

DR. DENNIS LANG

DR. MYRON M. LEVINE

DR. CAROL TACKET

DR. BERNARD IVANOFF

DR. JIM NATARO

DR. NANCY COX

DR. DOMINICK IACUZIO

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

## ALSO PRESENT (Continued):

DR. PETER PATRIARCA

DR. CARL FRASCH

DR. ROLAND LEVANDOWSKI

DR. CAROLYN HARDEGREE

DR. BILL EGAN

DR. DRUSILLA BURNS

DR. NEIL GOLDMAN

DR. MARCELLO STEIN

DR. KARN MIDTHUNE

DR. GINA RABINOVICH

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

## C-O-N-T-E-N-T-S

	<u>PAGE</u>
Conflict of Interest Statement	5
<u>Salmonella typhi Challenge Model:</u>	
Introduction and Questions, Dr. Pratt, FDA	13
Sponsor's Presentation:	
Dr. Dennis Lang	17
Dr. Myron M. Levine	21
Dr. Carol Tacket	45
Dr. Bernard Ivanoff	53
FDA Presentation, Dr. Pratt	93
Committee Discussion	117

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

P-R-O-C-E-E-D-I-N-G-S

(7:53 a.m.)

CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Good morning, everyone. I'd like to call the meeting to order.

I'm Dr. Patricia Ferrieri, chair of the Vaccines and Related Biological Products Advisory Committee, and we'll do introductions of everyone at the table in a moment, but I'd like to turn it over to Ms. Cherry so that we can deal with all of the other administrative issues.

MS. CHERRY: Well, first of all, I'd like to say welcome and to congratulate all of you who found the correct hotel this time. I was so afraid we would lose everyone because by habit you just might got a little farther down the street.

We have a long program, so we want to keep this on track as much as we can, and I have to take the first several minutes to read the conflict of interest statement.

This announcement is made a part of the record of this meeting of the Vaccines and Related Biological Products Advisory Committee on March 23rd, 1998.

Pursuant to the authority granted under the Committee charter, the Director of FDA, Center for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       Biologics Evaluation and Research, has appointed the  
2       following individuals as temporary voting members for  
3       the discussions involving the scientific and ethical  
4       considerations of the human challenge model using  
5       virulent salmonella typhi bacteria:   Drs. Joshua  
6       Fierer, Stephen Hoffman, Eric Mintz, Dixie Snider, and  
7       Harold Vanderpool.

8               The Director has also appointed the  
9       following as temporary voting members for the  
10       discussion on the influenza virus vaccine formulation  
11       for '98-'99:   Drs. Robert Breiman, Theodore Eickhoff,  
12       Edwin Kilbourne, Dixie Snider, and Robert Webster, and  
13       some of those will be joining us this afternoon.

14               Ms. Kathy Knowles, Executive Director of  
15       the Health Information Network in Seattle, is serving  
16       in the capacity of consumer representative for the  
17       Committee today.   That's in the absence of Ms. Rebecca  
18       Cole, who couldn't make it today.   Ms. Knowles is a  
19       nonvoting consultant.

20               By the way, I would also mention that Dr.  
21       Huang and Dr. Poland also could not be with us today.

22               Based on the agenda made available, it has  
23       been determined that all financial interests in firms  
24       regulated by the Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
25       Research that may be affected by the Committee's

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 discussions and have been reported by the  
2 participating members, temporary voting members, and  
3 consultants as of this date present no potential for  
4 the appearance of a conflict of interest at this  
5 meeting, with the following notations and disclosures.

6 I've got to do something to liven this up.

7 (Laughter.)

8 MS. CHERRY: For members, Dr. Ada Adimora,  
9 an appearance determination amendment was approved by  
10 the agency on April 4th of 1997 for an unrelated grant  
11 from NIAID from which she receives part of her salary.

12 For Dr. Mary Clements-Mann, a waiver was  
13 approved to permit her full participation in today's  
14 discussions and any votes taken today. In addition,  
15 Dr. Clements-Mann reported that she spoke on October  
16 24th of '97 at an unrelated grand round supported by  
17 a regulated firm where she received an honorarium.

18 Dr. Kathryn Edwards. A written appearance  
19 determination was approved for an unrelated grant and  
20 three unrelated contracts from NIAID, as well as an  
21 unrelated contract from a regulated firm. Dr. Edwards  
22 also has disclosed that she spoke in May of '97 on an  
23 unrelated issue sponsored by a regulated firm where  
24 she received an honorarium. In addition, she spoke on  
25 another unrelated topic sponsored by a regulated firm.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 She did not receive any personal remuneration.

2 Dr. Mary Estes. A written appearance  
3 determination was approved for unrelated contracts  
4 from NIAID. In addition, she has an unrelated  
5 research agreement with a regulated firm. She also  
6 disclosed that she was an invited speaker for a  
7 regulated firm on an unrelated topic. She received an  
8 honorarium.

9 Dr. Patricia Ferrieri has disclosed that  
10 she is a local principal investigator on an unrelated  
11 NIAID contract awarded to her university.

12 Dr. Harry Greenberg has disclosed that he  
13 holds an unrelated patent with NIH which was licensed  
14 to a regulated firm.

15 Dr. Caroline Hall. An appearance  
16 determination was approved for Dr. Hall for an  
17 unrelated NIAID contract -- oh, for unrelated  
18 contracts, plural, for which she received salary. In  
19 addition, she reported that in the past she consulted  
20 with a regulated firm on an unrelated issue. She  
21 received an honorarium.

22 For the consultants, Dr. Stephen Hoffman  
23 reported that his employer, the Naval Medical Research  
24 Institute, is negotiating an unrelated CRADA with a  
25 regulated firm. In addition, Dr. Hoffman reported a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 past unrelated speaking engagement with this regulated  
2 firm. He receives no personal remuneration.

3 Dr. Edwin Kilbourne reported that he is  
4 the co-investigator of an unrelated contract awarded  
5 by a regulated firm.

6 Dr. Eric Mintz reported that he co-  
7 authored a chapter on an unrelated topic with Dr.  
8 Myron Levine.

9 Dr. Cynthia Sears reported that she  
10 collaborates with a researcher at the University of  
11 Maryland on an unrelated grant which was awarded by  
12 NIAID. She receives salary for this collaboration.

13 The following participants did not have  
14 any financial interest to report: Ms. Katherine  
15 Knowles, Drs. Robert Breiman, Theodore Eickhoff,  
16 Joshua Fierer, Dixie Snider, Harold Vanderpool, and  
17 Robert Webster.

18 In regard to FDA's invited guest, Dr.  
19 Marion Danis, the agency has determined that her  
20 service is essential. She has no reported financial  
21 interests that would present a conflict of interest.

22 In the event that the discussions involve  
23 specific products or firms not on the agenda for which  
24 FDA's participants have a financial interest, the  
25 participants are aware of the need to exclude

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 themselves from any involvement, and their exclusion  
2 will be noted for the public record.

3 Screenings were conducted to prevent any  
4 appearance, real or apparent, of conflict of interest  
5 in today's Committee discussions.

6 Copies of all waiver statements and  
7 appearance determinations addressed in this  
8 announcement are available by written request under  
9 the Freedom of Information Act.

10 With respect to all other meeting  
11 participants, we ask in the interest of fairness that  
12 you address any current or previously financial  
13 involvement in any firm whose products you wish to  
14 comment on.

15 And I would also mention one other thing.  
16 Late this afternoon when we have the short reports on  
17 the laboratories, Dr. Michael Apicella will be joining  
18 us by teleconference, but that's late in the day.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Ms.  
20 Cherry.

21 I'll start then by introducing the table.  
22 If we could go clockwise starting with Dr. Danis,  
23 please, and your affiliation.

24 DR. DANIS: I'm Marion Danis from the  
25 Department of Clinical Bioethics at the Clinical

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Center of the National Institutes of Health.

2 MS. KNOWLES: And I'm Kathy Knowles. I'm  
3 from the Health Information Network in Seattle,  
4 Washington, and I'm acting as a consumer  
5 representative today.

6 DR. EICKHOFF: Ted Eickhoff, Department of  
7 Medicine, University of Colorado.

8 DR. HALL: Carolina Hall from the  
9 University of Rochester.

10 DR. ADIMORA: Ada Adimora from the  
11 University of North Carolina School of Medicine,  
12 Infectious Diseases.

13 DR. GREENBERG: Harry Greenberg from  
14 Stanford University and the Palo Alto VA Hospital.

15 DR. VANDERPOOL: I'm Harold Vanderpool of  
16 the University of Texas, the Medical Branch in  
17 Galveston.

18 DR. MINTZ: Eric Mintz from the Foodborne  
19 and Diarrheal Diseases Branch, CDC.

20 DR. HOFFMAN: Steve Hoffman, the Director  
21 of the Malaria Program, Naval Medical Research  
22 Institute in Bethesda.

23 DR. FIERER: Josh Fierer, the University  
24 of California, San Diego, and the VA Center.

25 DR. EDWARDS: Kathy Edwards, Department of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Pediatrics, Vanderbilt University.

2 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Mary Lou Clements-  
3 Mann, Johns Hopkins University School of Public  
4 Health.

5 DR. SNIDER: Dixie Snider, Associate  
6 Director for Science, CDC.

7 DR. ESTES: Mary Estes, Molecular  
8 Virology, Baylor College of Medicine.

9 DR. SEARS: Cynthia Sears, Johns Hopkins  
10 University School of Medicine.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I'm Patricia  
12 Ferrieri of Departments of Lab Medicine, Pathology,  
13 and Pediatrics at the University of Minnesota Medical  
14 School.

15 As we proceed with the morning and  
16 afternoon program, when you wish to speak, I'd like  
17 you to raise your hand, and I will acknowledge you  
18 here at the table, and that you will state your name  
19 because our recorder needs to know that, and some of  
20 you are not as well known to me, and I may not  
21 remember your name when I need to.

22 Good morning. Dr. Robert Breiman, would  
23 you like to introduce yourself and your affiliation?

24 DR. BREIMAN: I'm late, and I'm Dr. Rob  
25 Breiman.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 (Laughter.)

2 DR. BREIMAN: From the National Vaccine  
3 Program Office.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

5 Well, we'll move ahead then, and I'll turn  
6 the program over to Dr. Douglas Pratt from FDA, who  
7 will then make a presentation, and then we'll move to  
8 the sponsors.

9 Good morning, Dr. Pratt.

10 DR. PRATT: Good morning, members of the  
11 Committee, colleagues, and guests. My name is Douglas  
12 Pratt. I'm a medical officer in the Division of  
13 Vaccines and Related Products at FDA.

14 The purpose of this morning's meeting is  
15 to consider a proposal to conduct human challenge  
16 studies of typhoid fever. The Division of  
17 Microbiology and Infectious Diseases at NIAID, working  
18 with investigators at the University of Maryland's  
19 Center for Vaccine Development have proposed in pre-  
20 IND submissions and discussions to initiate a series  
21 of studies based on a human challenge model of typhoid  
22 fever.

23 The challenge model under consideration  
24 proposes to infect human volunteers with live,  
25 nonattenuated, pathogenic salmonella typhi.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 The stated objectives of the study are:

2 One, to identify vaccine candidates worthy  
3 of evaluation in large scale trials in endemic areas;

4 Two, to demonstrate whether the candidate  
5 vaccines protect immunologically naive individuals as  
6 would be the case of travelers from nonendemic to  
7 endemic areas; and

8 Three, to investigate the pathogenesis in  
9 human immune response to wild type salmonella typhi  
10 and to attenuated vaccine strains.

11 Beginning in the 1950s, human challenge  
12 studies of typhoid fever were conducted by  
13 investigators at the University of Maryland School of  
14 Medicine. Hundreds of adult male inmates at the  
15 Maryland correctional facility at Jessup, Maryland,  
16 served as human subjects. Investigators elected to  
17 terminate these studies in 1974.

18 The proposed model differs in important  
19 respects from the earlier challenge model. Drs.  
20 Levine and Tacket will be presenting details of the  
21 proposed study shortly.

22 A draft protocol was submitted to FDA in  
23 October of 1997. FDA questions and comments regarding  
24 the protocol were conveyed to the sponsor, and a face-  
25 to-face meeting took place in November.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           The sponsor has been responsive to FDA's  
2 safety concerns and considerable of protocol  
3 modifications suggested by FDA reviewers intended to  
4 enhance safety of the study.

5           A revised protocol, along with responses  
6 to FDA comments is included in the sponsor's briefing  
7 packet.

8           Clearly, thoughtful efforts have been made  
9 to minimize serious consequences to study participants  
10 and to reduce the chance that secondary cases may  
11 occur in the community.

12           However, the serious nature of systemic  
13 infection with this bacteria make even a rare  
14 possibility cause for concern.

15           A determination that a human challenge may  
16 proceed deserves the benefit of unbiased expertise in  
17 evaluating the risks to subjects and the usefulness of  
18 the data that may be generated.

19           Due also to the complex nature of human  
20 challenge studies in general and given the history of  
21 typhoid challenge studies among inmates, we in the  
22 Reviewing Division of FDA feel that the typhoid fever  
23 challenge model and associated ethical issues should  
24 be carefully considered and discussed openly among  
25 experts in the field.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                   During the sponsor's presentation, please  
2                   be mindful of the questions posed to the Committee,  
3                   and I'll read them now.

4                   Number one, does information likely to be  
5                   gained from this model justify the risks to subjects  
6                   and the community?

7                   Number two, if yes, please discuss any  
8                   recommendations for modifying the study protocol and  
9                   consent form. Specifically, please comment on the  
10                  criteria proposed for initiating antibiotic treatment,  
11                  which are temperature greater than 38.3 degrees  
12                  Centigrade for 12 hours or bacteremia occurring on  
13                  days seven through 14. Please comment on whether  
14                  blood cultures should be obtained on days five and  
15                  six. Please comment on the proposal for out-patient  
16                  antibiotic treatment of subjects who continue to have  
17                  positive stool cultures after an initial in-patient  
18                  course.

19                  And are there other changes to the  
20                  protocol entry criteria, monitoring procedures, or  
21                  study design which you would suggest, for example,  
22                  staging of enrollment, stopping rules, monitoring of  
23                  in-patient and out-patient contacts?

24                  And, finally, does the consent form  
25                  adequately address the potential risk to volunteers?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1           Following the sponsor's presentation, I  
2 will return and present some additional points to  
3 consider in your deliberations, and the questions will  
4 again be projected at that time.

5           So I'll turn it over now to Drs. Levine  
6 and Tacket.

7           DR. LANG: Good morning. I'm not Drs.  
8 Levine or Tacket. I'm Dennis Lang, the Enteric  
9 Diseases Program Officer at NIAID.

10           And we are, as was just mentioned, the  
11 sponsors for this study to look at a new human  
12 challenge model for salmonella typhi in humans, and I  
13 would just like to take a few moments prior to turning  
14 it over to Drs. Levine and Tacket to try and put this  
15 study into the context of our institute's support for  
16 both enteric diseases as a whole and specifically  
17 salmonella research.

18           The total budget of my program in enteric  
19 diseases, which covers everything from astro virus to  
20 ursinea enteracholitic (phonetic), alphabetically, is  
21 about \$33 million a year. Currently, we are spending  
22 about just a little bit over \$5 million of that on  
23 salmonella research. That \$5 million is equivalent to  
24 the amount that we spend on the other two largest  
25 supported organisms in my portfolio, which are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 vibriocholera and all of the E. coli combined.

2           There are 32 awards presently supported by  
3 our institute on salmonella, and to a large degree,  
4 that support is really for two organisms: salmonella  
5 typhi and salmonella typhimurium as a model, a mouse  
6 model, for human typhoid fever.

7           Largely unsupported are the other  
8 salmonella that you read about in the newspaper every  
9 day, those causing food-borne diarrheal diseases. So  
10 the vast majority, over 90, 95 percent of our total  
11 portfolio goes basically to understand typhoid fever.

12           As will be pointed out by Dr. Levine, this  
13 is a huge problem, and I'm sure all of you are aware  
14 of that, worldwide, and I think for years we have --  
15 the institute has -- supported this with that  
16 realization that this is an important problem and  
17 deserving of a lot of activity.

18           I think, moreover, the fact that  
19 salmonella is an organism that's so well studied, so  
20 well understood at the genetic level that it has  
21 served in a lot of respects as a model for other  
22 enteric organisms, and its role as a potential vector  
23 for the development of other vaccines for other  
24 enterics and other diseases, in fact, I think is a  
25 statement of that effort.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           Okay. What does our research focus on in  
2 salmonella organism? Four areas essentially.

3           Mostly the genetics of virulence, that is,  
4 understanding the various genes and their role in  
5 pathogenesis, their isolation, their cloning, their  
6 overexpression, their deletion, in fact, to create  
7 potential vaccine strains.

8           Vaccine development per se is a reasonably  
9 large effort, and there are now currently three live  
10 attenuated vaccine vectors that have been developed as  
11 a result of NIH support. Dr. Levine will be  
12 mentioning all three of those, and I don't need to say  
13 anymore about it at this point.

14           In addition to these strains being  
15 developed as vaccines against salmonella typhi, as  
16 I've just mentioned, there's also a lot of effort in  
17 using salmonella and these attenuated strains to  
18 express foreign antigens as well, to protect not only  
19 against salmonella, but against other enteric  
20 diseases, and there's a lot of activity in our  
21 portfolio in that regard.

22           And I think last but certainly not least  
23 is the more recent effort just in the last few months  
24 with two awards having been made to completely  
25 sequence the genomes of both salmonella typhi and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 salmonella typhimurium, and I think needless to say,  
2 within the next couple of years, this information is  
3 going to revolutionize the way we look at pathogenesis  
4 of this organism, as well as produce new ideas and new  
5 thoughts about how to attenuate these strains as  
6 vaccine candidates.

7 The other important aspect of the work  
8 that we support is not necessarily just in the grant  
9 support, although that's certainly an important part,  
10 but we also commit large amounts of money in contract  
11 support essentially to test pathogenesis and vaccine  
12 development, not only for salmonella, but with a lot  
13 of other in my portfolio at least enteric organisms.

14 And those activities occur at what we have  
15 funded as the vaccine testing and evaluation unit, and  
16 a large contract called the enteric pathogens research  
17 unit. So these contracts are supporting both basic  
18 research, as well as applied research and the testing  
19 in volunteers and humans, pathogenesis and vaccine  
20 efficacy.

21 Those studies would be largely facilitated  
22 by the availability of a human challenge model similar  
23 to what we've had available in cholera and some other  
24 organisms for the identification of really good  
25 candidates, I think, for large scale trials.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           To be able to have in a small number of  
2 volunteers some indication that we're producing a  
3 vaccine that's efficacious and safe is a very  
4 important first step, I think, towards making choices,  
5 expensive choices, about how to proceed with vaccine  
6 testing on a larger scale.

7           So I think with that introduction I will  
8 stop, and I look forward to the discussion this  
9 morning. I think it's going to be very interesting  
10 and informative for all of us, and I'll turn it over  
11 to Mike Levine.

12           Thanks.

13           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
14 Lang.

15           Dr. Levine.

16           DR. LEVINE: Thank you.

17           Good morning. I'd like to thank the  
18 Committee for the opportunity to present this  
19 proposal.

20           If I might have the first slide, this is  
21 a summary of the approach we'll take in presenting the  
22 proposal. I'll provide a rationale and background.  
23 Dr. Carol Tacket will summarize and describe the  
24 clinical protocol. Dr. Bernard Ivanoff will, from the  
25 World Health Organization, will describe the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 importance of this model from the World Health  
2 Organization perspective.

3 Our approach is that typhoid fever is a  
4 reemerging infection on the world scene, and this  
5 proposal is part of a multi-agency attempt to provide  
6 a better immunoprophylaxis. This multi-agency  
7 approach includes the National Institute of Allergy  
8 and Infectious Diseases, the Center for Vaccine  
9 Development, and the World Health Organization.

10 One of the estimates of the worldwide  
11 burden of typhoid fever is that there are  
12 approximately 30 million cases that occur each year  
13 with between 500 and 600,000 deaths, almost entirely  
14 in the developing world.

15 What makes typhoid a reemerging problem is  
16 the appearance in many parts of the developing world  
17 of salmonella typhi strains that carry resistance  
18 plasmids encoding resistance to all the antibiotics  
19 that have been useful during the past decade.

20 The targets for use of vaccine include  
21 travelers from the United States and other  
22 industrialized countries who visit those developing  
23 areas of the world where this problem is highly  
24 endemic and increasing; microbiology technicians. The  
25 Centers for Disease Control showed some years ago that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 clinical microbiology technicians have about a 30-fold  
2 increased risk of developing typhoid; and lastly, and  
3 from the burden point of view, children in endemic  
4 areas, that group that together suffers the greatest  
5 number of cases worldwide.

6 Typhoid fever was originally an emerging  
7 infection in the early 19th Century, and once again in  
8 the 1990s is a reemerging problem, reemerging because  
9 although salmonella typhi generally does not like to  
10 carry plasmids, which is an interesting feature, it  
11 does accept plasmids of incompatibility Group H1 and  
12 strains that are found in the Indian subcontinent, in  
13 the Middle East, in Northeast Africa, and in Southeast  
14 Asia, are now carrying INK (phonetic) H1 plasmids that  
15 encode resistances to chloramphenicol, trimethaprim  
16 sulfur methoxizol, and amoxycillin, the antibiotics  
17 that were the primary drugs of choice in the 1980s.

18 Until 1997, from 1990 to 1997,  
19 ciprofloxacin in these parts of the world was a very  
20 useful antibiotic. However, because of the  
21 availability and uncontrolled and widespread use of  
22 ciprofloxacin, very low potency, in Southeast Asia and  
23 parts of the subcontinent, there have now appeared  
24 ciprofloxacin resistant strains, with the resistance  
25 being encoded by chromosomal genes. These are being

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 selected for by this widespread, promiscuous use of  
2 antibiotics, and we're reaching the point where in  
3 poor communities of Southeast Asia and the  
4 subcontinent, this is a very, very difficult disease  
5 to treat because the only antibiotics, such as  
6 sephtriaxone are beyond the means for routine use for  
7 those communities.

8           What is the risk of typhoid for U.S.  
9 travelers? This was reviewed in the late 1980s by the  
10 enteric diseases group at CDC. This represents the  
11 incidence per million travelers with countries at  
12 highest risk for the period of the 1980s.

13           A risk of 174 or 119 per million  
14 travelers, that is, 17 or 11.9 per 100,000 travelers,  
15 if that were an annual incidence, that would be an  
16 incidence of some import, not super high, but  
17 certainly of concern.

18           Bear in mind though that most of these  
19 travelers go to these places for one or two or maybe  
20 four weeks. So one needs to multiply these incidence  
21 rates by 50 or 26 or perhaps 12, and one then reaches  
22 what would be an equivalent of an annual incidence  
23 rate of from 200 to over 1,000, and these are  
24 impressively high incidence rates equal to what one  
25 sees in hyperendemic areas.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 I'm going to briefly mention our  
2 understanding of the pathogenesis of typhoid fever,  
3 and I'm going to say that this is an approximation  
4 because of the fact there are great questions that we  
5 have.

6 Understanding the pathogenesis comes from  
7 four main sources. It comes from the mouse model that  
8 utilizes salmonella typhimurium and salmonella  
9 enteritidis. It comes from human autopsy studies with  
10 large series in the pre-antibiotic era. It comes from  
11 a chimpanzee model of typhoid that was developed in  
12 the 1960s at Walter Reed, and it comes from human  
13 volunteer challenge studies in the 1960s and early  
14 1970s.

15 What we know then is that salmonella typhi  
16 is always ingested in food and water vehicles. It  
17 must pass the important gastric acid barrier of the  
18 stomach, a potent defense mechanism.

19 When the organisms reach the small  
20 intestine, they translocate. They do this by two  
21 ways. They're taken up by N cells, the micropholic  
22 cells that cover gut associated lymphoid tissue, such  
23 as the peyer's patches in the ilium, or if the  
24 inoculum is a bit larger, salmonella have the  
25 propensity to be taken up in a pinocytotic vesicle

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that involves cross-talk, if you will, between the  
2 bacteria and the intracite, and in this vesicle, the  
3 vesicle then passes to the basolateral surface where  
4 they're released.

5 From the N cells they are taken up by the  
6 lymphoid tissue below, particularly by the  
7 macrophages. If they reach the laminapropia, they  
8 call in a potent macrophage chemotactic response, and  
9 they are then ingested by macrophages.

10 Virulent salmonella typhi have virulence  
11 properties that allow them to survive within  
12 phagocytic vesicles within the macrophages. The  
13 organisms drain to the mesenteric lymph nodes and  
14 either as free bacteria, which is probably the rarity,  
15 or as macrophage associated bacteria, they enter the  
16 lymph circulation and then via the thoracic duct they  
17 enter the blood circulation. A primary bacteremia is  
18 believed to occur and the organisms end up in the  
19 spleen, liver, bone marrow, the organs of the  
20 reticular and endothelial system.

21 This is very clear in the mouse model.  
22 That is, there are two clear bacteremias, a very low  
23 level primary bacteremia that seeds the reticular  
24 endothelial system.

25 One of the most pressing questions in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 human pathogenesis is whether, indeed, this occurs in  
2 humans. Be that as it may, after eight to 14 days of  
3 sitting quietly in an individual during incubation  
4 period, the clinical illness begins with fever,  
5 abdominal discomfort, and headache, and there is an  
6 associated secondary bacteremia.

7 The clinical picture of acute typhoid  
8 classically begins with fever that increases in a  
9 step-wise or step ladder fashion. It's associated  
10 malaise, with headache, with abdominal discomfort.

11 Adults often have constipation. Some may  
12 have diarrhea. Children more often have diarrhea, and  
13 when diarrhea occurs a bit later in the course, it  
14 often has a so-called green, pea soup characteristic  
15 appearance.

16 One not uncommonly sees a bronchitic cough  
17 with typhoid. Uncommonly one sees chills or rose  
18 spots.

19 In the pre-antibiotic era, if one reads  
20 Sir William Osler's chapter on typhoid in his book,  
21 and I left it as a reference his chapter from his 1898  
22 edition of his Textbook of Medicine, you can see  
23 virtually every organ system involved.

24 Pre-antibiotic era typhoid was a disease  
25 that could extend for four, five, six, seven weeks,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 and at different periods, different weeks, one saw  
2 different complications. I want to stress that these  
3 things one overwhelmingly sees in delayed or  
4 suboptimal or in the pre-antibiotic era type of  
5 situation.

6 Let me speak to several complications that  
7 should be of import to us. In the pre-antibiotic era  
8 approximately ten percent of individuals suffered  
9 relapses. They had acute typhoid. They got better,  
10 and then they came down again with fever. Almost  
11 always the relapse was much milder.

12 In the antibiotic era, with the advent of  
13 chloramphenicol, which in 1948 changed entirely the  
14 natural course of typhoid, the occurrence of relapse  
15 actually increased to about ten or 15 or 20 or 25  
16 percent.

17 A few percent of individuals with wild  
18 type illness may develop chronic gall bladder  
19 infection. The propensity to become a chronic gall  
20 bladder carrier is a consequence of preexistent gall  
21 bladder disease. This is why the occurrence of this  
22 complication follows the same epidemiology as  
23 cholelithiasis or gall bladder disease. It is much  
24 more frequent in women than in men and increases with  
25 age.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           Chronic gall bladder disease is extremely  
2 uncommon in young children who have acute typhoid  
3 fever for that reason.

4           Almost any organ system involvement has  
5 been described in pre-antibiotic era typhoid.  
6 However, I'd like to point out that the complications  
7 that one might see is very much a consequence of the  
8 population.

9           Let's begin with the concept of case  
10 fatality. In pre-antibiotic era, a typical water  
11 borne outbreak, as in Olean, New York, would have been  
12 associated with a ten or 12 or 15 percent case  
13 fatality.

14           This is a summary of the published  
15 outbreaks in the United States in what I call the  
16 modern era, post 1970. There are two other outbreaks.  
17 I made this slide on Friday, and it should have been  
18 passed out to you.

19           There are two additional outbreaks that I  
20 couldn't lay hands on, but those outbreaks occurred in  
21 the State of Washington and in association with a  
22 large Hispanic family picnic on the East Coast also  
23 were not associated with case fatality.

24           The complications that one sees very much  
25 depends upon the population. To give some examples,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 in Latin America, typhoid fever tended to be a much  
2 milder clinical infection than is seen in Asia and  
3 some parts of Africa. The clinical syndrome of  
4 typhoid that one sees in these outbreaks in the United  
5 States is very, very different than one sees in  
6 endemic disease in the poorest countries of the world  
7 for obvious reasons.

8 And I would suggest that it's this  
9 population that should be one measure of the way  
10 typhoid infection is handled in the U.S. population,  
11 and this should be recognized as being an unselected  
12 population if one limits -- if infection were entirely  
13 limited to healthy young adults, as has happened, for  
14 example, in some British army groups in Northeast  
15 Africa. The illness tends to be very, very mild and  
16 limited and virtually without complications.

17 When you look at percentages of  
18 complications, please consider what is the  
19 denominator.

20 Typhoid fever has an iceberg effect, if  
21 you will epidemiologically. The tip, the tip of the  
22 iceberg ends up in hospitals whether it's in an  
23 endemic area or in an industrialized country. For  
24 each individual who ends up in the hospital, there are  
25 many other cases of much, much milder infection.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           And so I think we can briefly summarize  
2 the situation as follows. In the pre-antibiotic era  
3 typhoid was often severe. There was no way to modify  
4 the clinical course. Complications were common, and  
5 case fatality was ten to 20 percent whether we were  
6 speaking of the United States in 1940 or a developing  
7 country.

8           In the post antibiotic era we see endemic  
9 disease, and we see travelers' typhoid. Endemic  
10 disease as we saw it in Latin America, for example,  
11 during the four large scale field trials of Ty21A that  
12 our group carried out in Santiago, Chile, an endemic  
13 area. There were hundreds of cases of typhoid in the  
14 placebo control groups, and there was no fatality and  
15 there were few complications in that particular  
16 environment.

17           In Asia, in parts of Asia, particularly in  
18 the poorer countries where health care services are  
19 more limited, the case fatality can be somewhat  
20 higher.

21           And then there is the experience of  
22 experimental challenge where there was a generally  
23 mild illness because of prompt intervention, where  
24 complications were extremely rare, and of course,  
25 there was zero case fatality.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           Chronic typhoid carriers. To reiterate,  
2           in the acute infection, salmonella typhi always ends  
3           up in the gall bladder. This is why duodenal string  
4           capsules that sample bile are such an effective  
5           diagnostic tool.

6           But the propensity to become a chronic  
7           carrier relates to whether the gall bladder has  
8           preexistent mucosal disease and, in particular,  
9           whether there are gall stones. For this reason, to  
10          reiterate, the prevalence of carriers after infection  
11          parallels the epidemiology of gall bladder disease,  
12          females greater than males, increases with age.

13          There are good typhoid vaccines today in  
14          relative terms. In the United States and many other  
15          countries, there are three vaccines licensed. The  
16          old, killed, whole cell parenteral vaccine, which for  
17          civilians is a heat enacted phenol preserved  
18          preparation.

19          There is oral Ty21A, and there is  
20          parenteral purified Vi polysaccharide.

21          Now, these are good vaccines, the old  
22          killed whole cell vaccine being, I would suggest, the  
23          exception because of its unacceptable reactogenicity,  
24          but Ty21A and parenteral Vi, these are good vaccines  
25          that represent an advance over the old killed whole

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 cell. These are well tolerated.

2 But these vaccines also have significant  
3 drawbacks that limit their use and their compliance  
4 and their acceptability. For example, Ty21A requires  
5 four doses in the U.S. and Canada, three doses in the  
6 rest of the world. The need for multiple doses really  
7 diminishes compliance and uptake.

8 The efficacy of all of these vaccines is  
9 only moderate. We'd like to do better. The  
10 parenteral Vi vaccine, we have data on efficacy, 50  
11 percent efficacy at three years and no data beyond  
12 that.

13 So for each of these vaccines, we really  
14 would like to do better.

15 On the global scene, we have to do better,  
16 and the reason is that even though typhoid is a  
17 reemerging problem, it's becoming a major and  
18 increasingly important public health problem in many  
19 countries in Southeast Asia and in the subcontinent.  
20 None of those countries, not a single one, has elected  
21 to use in a programmatic fashion either Ty21A or Vi.

22 Why? The reason is that the  
23 infrastructure to give out vaccines in a systematic  
24 way is the expanded program on immunization, which is  
25 limited in those countries to the first year of life,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 and these are not vaccines that work in the first year  
2 of life.

3 With Ty21A, we know nothing about its even  
4 immunogenicity in infancy, and with Vi it's not very  
5 immunogenic in infancy.

6 We can use these vaccines in school based  
7 programs, but countries say that they don't have the  
8 resources for that type of use. So the health  
9 ministries have asked World Health Organization and  
10 groups that develop typhoid vaccines. They have said,  
11 "Give us a well tolerated, but more potent vaccine  
12 that we can use in the EPI and that will be so  
13 protective, immunization in infancy will protect all  
14 the way through the high school years.

15 And that's the goal of groups that work on  
16 developing new and improved typhoid vaccines, and  
17 there are candidates now that are coming along and are  
18 at an important stage.

19 There's the Vi conjugate that come from  
20 two groups. One of those groups, an NIH group, has a  
21 Vi conjugate in a field trial in Vietnam.

22 Another group, a regulated company, has a  
23 vaccine that's in Phase 2 trials.

24 Engineered single dose, live oral  
25 vaccines, there are three candidates that have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 completed Phase 1 studies. One at least is in Phase  
2 2 studies.

3 Chi 4073 was developed by Roy Curtis and  
4 his group at Washington University. It's a CYA CRP CT  
5 triple mutant.

6 Ty800 was developed by Elizabeth Holman  
7 and Sam Miller and has mutations in pho P/pho Q.

8 CVD 908 HTRA was co-developed by our group  
9 at the Center for Vaccine Development and Mediva and  
10 Imperial College in London. These are attractive  
11 vaccine candidates that we would like to see move in  
12 an accelerated fashion towards becoming potential  
13 public health tools for the less developed areas of  
14 the world that need typhoid control, and also to  
15 protect travelers.

16 The fact is we see several hundred cases  
17 of typhoid each year amongst U.S. travelers, the  
18 overwhelming majority in individuals who have not take  
19 typhoid vaccine. Usually they have not taken it or in  
20 great part because of the limitations of the vaccines.

21 Through the typhoid challenge model we  
22 would expect to reestablish strains that would be  
23 useful, demonstrating that they can elicit an attack  
24 rate of clinically acceptable abbreviated disease. By  
25 means of a bicarbonate buffer, we would hope to have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 a challenge dose that would give a high attack rate  
2 with a relatively low inoculum.

3 And with this, we would hope to measure  
4 vaccine efficacy of these new candidates, selecting  
5 strains that could go out for large scale field trial  
6 and establishing that these vaccines can work in the  
7 immunologically naive North America.

8 And ideally we would hope to identify  
9 correlates of protection that would allow us to look  
10 at formulations and immunization schedules.

11 As secondary aims, there would be the  
12 opportunity to identify host risk factors, to  
13 elucidate pathogenesis, perhaps answering those  
14 fundamental questions that remain, and to characterize  
15 in an intensive way the immune response.

16 I don't seem to be advancing. There.

17 In seeing up such a challenge model, there  
18 are ethical issues. There are microbiological issues.  
19 There are practical and logistical considerations.

20 With any challenge model, the whole  
21 concept goes against the grain of what we as  
22 physicians are trained to do to prevent disease, to  
23 treat disease, to diminish the discomfort of disease.

24 But a fact of life, as Dr. Lang mentioned,  
25 is that there are in the United States a number of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 challenge studies that are carried out to help advance  
2 vaccine evaluation, and the key to this is to be sure  
3 that the risk is truly minimal, indeed, minuscule, and  
4 we would hope to show you that in our opinion and  
5 based on past experience, this is our expectation.

6           There is no problem, in our view,  
7 informing the volunteers. There's no problem  
8 establishing consent, and indeed, individuals by their  
9 own volition in the course of work and in the course  
10 of play put themselves at risk. They climb mountains.  
11 They go down rivers with gorges, with six foot waves.  
12 They jump out of airplanes.

13           That's not the point. The point is in  
14 this instance we are giving wild type organisms to a  
15 healthy young adult population, and we must be sure  
16 that we are comfortable that there is minimal risk,  
17 and we believe there is.

18           There are microbiologic issues. There is  
19 a strain that was used extensively some years ago.  
20 There's also a modern strain. We ask the Committee  
21 for help and guidance with respect to prioritizing  
22 these two strains.

23           And lastly, there are rather daunting  
24 logistical and practical considerations to carrying  
25 out such a challenge, essentially a month of physical

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       containment to be able to control the situation.

2               This is a list of what I call modern  
3 challenge models, models that have been undertaken  
4 since approximately 1970. There have been bacterial  
5 challenges. There has been a rickettsial challenge.  
6 There are viral challenges and parasitic challenges.

7               There are some invasive organism  
8 challenges, rickettsia. There are some challenges  
9 with organisms that were untreatable. Cryptosporidium  
10 is an example.

11              And so in considering this, we ask that a  
12 degree of balance be kept in mind in terms of what is  
13 ongoing, such as invasive malaria, in other vaccine  
14 development programs.

15              The challenge studies to measure vaccine  
16 efficacy will use defined strains and inoculum. They  
17 will establish whether these vaccines in this model  
18 protect U.S. subjects, information that we believe is  
19 important.

20              They will allow a measure of the period of  
21 onset of protection, something that's quite difficult  
22 to establish in the field.

23              They are relatively economical compared to  
24 field trials for which there are few limited field  
25 areas, and they can provide relatively rapid answers.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           We must consider the severity of clinical  
2 illness in experimental infection versus what we see  
3 with natural infection, and the point I want to make  
4 is that if you look at untreated malaria or malaria  
5 treated in the least developed parts of the world,  
6 that's a completely different situation than the  
7 experimental challenge.

8           The same is true for cholera, El tor or  
9 classical. The same is true for shigellosis.

10           Experimental illness is much, much, much  
11 milder compared to natural infection, and the key for  
12 these three is prompt therapy that ameliorates that  
13 illness, limiting the severity.

14           These are some questions that our group  
15 grappled with and shared in discussions with NIH and  
16 with the WHO.

17           What is the severity of natural disease in  
18 the group that's as close as possible to the  
19 participants in such a trial? That is to say healthy  
20 young adult subjects in the United States.

21           Is the clinical disease treatable? Our  
22 answer is yes. Ciprofloxacin is one of the two drugs  
23 that has had an extraordinary impact on typhoid fever  
24 treatment over the past half century, chloramphenicol  
25 being the other.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           What is the risk to the community, and is  
2 physical containment required? We believe yes, and in  
3 that way we minimize the chance of salmonella typhi  
4 organisms being released into the community.

5           Can we document the subject's baseline  
6 health? To us in great part this means demonstrating  
7 that an individual is not an individual with chronic  
8 gall bladder disease.

9           And can follow-up be assured? Our track  
10 record in many other studies over the years, I  
11 believe, establishes that we do good follow-up and can  
12 assure that.

13           And so there are several concerns, and  
14 this is how we propose to answer them. We must limit  
15 the severity and the duration of clinical illness, and  
16 we do this by early ciprofloxacin therapy with a  
17 ciprofloxacin sensitive strain. This is an  
18 extraordinarily effect antibiotic in our experience in  
19 the field.

20           This antibiotic also limits short term  
21 excretion. It precludes long term carriage for all  
22 intents and purposes, and particularly if we exclude  
23 individuals who do not have gall bladder pathology,  
24 the chance of having a chronic carriage, we believe,  
25 is minuscule, and furthermore, we would suggest that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 not only is ciprofloxacin a unique antibiotic compared  
2 to chloramphenicol, compared to amoxicillin or  
3 compared to trimethaprin sulfamethoxizol. Not only  
4 does it virtually preclude chronic carriage, but in  
5 our experience in Chile, when you have individuals who  
6 are chronic carriers with gall bladder disease and  
7 other antibiotics have been attempted, we had a very  
8 good experience, a 90 percent success rate in treating  
9 chronic carriers with oral ciprofloxacin during a  
10 several week therapy.

11 Now, let's talk about this earlier model  
12 that took place from about 1959 to 1975. A total of  
13 1,886 volunteers participated in those typhoid vaccine  
14 studies. Six hundred and seventy-two ingested this  
15 wild type strain that we call Quailles, at a does of  
16 ten to the five colony forming units.

17 Two hundred and thirty-five of these 672  
18 developed clinical illness. At 20 days post  
19 challenge, 60 percent of the ill and eight percent of  
20 well subjects had positive stool cultures when they  
21 were treated with chloramphenicol.

22 In this population where screening for  
23 gall bladder disease was not done initially, there was  
24 one long term carrier, and this occurred after  
25 actually most of these challenges had taken place, and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that individual in the pre-ciprofloxacin era was cured  
2 with cholecystectomy and antibiotic therapy.

3 There were several other complications  
4 that were seen in association with these studies that  
5 I'll mention. There was an instance of diarrhea where  
6 it was considered sufficiently heavy diarrhea so that  
7 an individual received rehydration fluids.

8 One individual developed a pleural  
9 effusion. However, it was the opinion of the  
10 clinicians that this was not associated with the  
11 typhoid, but rather was associated with intravenous  
12 drug abuse, a practice that did occur even in  
13 incarcerated individuals.

14 Another individual had gastrointestinal  
15 bleeding. This is an individual who was not treated  
16 with antibiotics during his acute infection and had a  
17 relapse and had the GI bleeding. The model that you  
18 will hear about that we will propose, everybody gets  
19 antibiotics.

20 And lastly, there was an individual who  
21 developed diabetes, and we don't attribute this  
22 directly to typhoid per se. This could have happened  
23 with any other type of challenge study.

24 There was one individual who had had a  
25 history of psychiatric problems who had psychiatric

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 problems for a period of time, of days after  
2 challenge.

3 In that early model typhoid fever was  
4 defined as an oral temperature of 38.3 degrees or  
5 greater in association with isolation of salmonella  
6 typhi from blood or from stool.

7 Indications for treatment were a bit more  
8 stringent, much more stringent than what we are  
9 proposing. Initially it was 39.4 degrees Centigrade  
10 for 24 or even 36 hours in the early studies or 101  
11 degrees Fahrenheit for 48 hours. One had to have  
12 reached these criteria for therapy in that model.

13 This shows the dose response with  
14 increasing doses for three logs, five logs, seven,  
15 eight, and nine logs carried giving the organisms in  
16 45 milliliters of milk. You see that at three logs  
17 there's a zero attack rate, and at nine logs there's  
18 a 95 percent attack rate, and at five logs, in those  
19 dose response studies, a 28 percent attack rate.

20 Now, what is the -- I'm having a little  
21 trouble here. Carol, if you could advance that.  
22 Thank you.

23 What is the consistency of the attack  
24 rate? In this slide I summarized the attack rate in  
25 the control group in various challenge studies that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 evaluated vaccines, such as Ty21A, strep dependent  
2 vaccines, parenteral whole cell, et cetera.

3 One see here then the -- I must apologize  
4 for the way I used -- I'm color blind. So I have  
5 great difficult with this little dot. I have to see  
6 it as a light spot against the dark. So bear with me,  
7 please.

8 Anyway, you see the attack rate, and it's  
9 fairly consistent, mostly hovering around 40 to 55  
10 percent, a couple of outliers.

11 I would also like to mention that the  
12 individuals who developed this model and had the  
13 greatest experience originally include Theodore  
14 Woodward, Richard B. Hornick, and Herbert DuPont.  
15 Those three individuals went on at various points in  
16 time to become presidents of the Infectious Disease  
17 Society of America. There are highly respected  
18 infectious disease clinicians and investigators.

19 Carol.

20 The two strains that we're proposing and  
21 that we're asking for guidance in selecting the  
22 challenge strain, Quailes is the one given to almost  
23 2,000 volunteers. It was isolated in 1958 from a  
24 chronic carrier in Maryland. It's Phage Type D1.  
25 There is this vast challenge experience, and we think

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 it's important to use this strain.

2 In addition, we're proposing that perhaps  
3 we can look at a more modern strain, if you will, ISP  
4 1820, isolated in 1983 from a Chilean child with  
5 typhoid fever during Ty21A field trial. It is Phage  
6 Type 46. It was never used for challenge, but we  
7 suspect that it is, indeed, a pathogenic strain  
8 because one vaccine strain made from this parent was  
9 not fully attenuated, and that's a hint that the wild  
10 type parent would, indeed, be.

11 And lastly, I want to reiterate that we  
12 have potent antibiotics to treat sensitive strains.  
13 Ciprofloxacin is an extremely effective antibiotic.  
14 It is almost in a class by itself compared to earlier  
15 generations of antibiotics, including chloramphenicol,  
16 amoxicillin and trimethoprim sulfamethoxazole.

17 I'd like to stop at this point and pass  
18 the baton to Dr. Tacket.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
20 Levine. The Committee appreciates very much your  
21 adherence to the time allotted, and I'd encourage all  
22 the other speakers to also adhere to the schedule.

23 DR. TACKET: My job this morning is to  
24 describe for you briefly the clinical protocol which  
25 we have been developing for typhoid challenges.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           As Mike has summarized already, the broad  
2 purposes of such a study would be to identify vaccine  
3 candidates which are worthy of evaluation in  
4 expensive, time consuming, large scale field trials in  
5 endemic areas; to measure vaccine efficacy in persons  
6 from nonendemic areas, namely, U.S. citizens; and to  
7 intensively investigate both the pathogenesis and the  
8 human immune response to wild type S. typhi.

9           More specifically, the goals would be to  
10 achieve an attack rate of typhoid fever of about 75  
11 percent without causing unduly severe typhoid; to  
12 induce illness with a relatively low inoculum of three  
13 or four logs of organisms; to evaluate a modern S.  
14 typhi isolate, ISP 1820, as a possible alternative to  
15 the previously used Quailes strain; to identify a  
16 strain which causes illness with a relatively short  
17 inoculation period, for practical reasons; and to use  
18 sodium bicarbonate instead of skim milk to buffer the  
19 stomach acid.

20           The study design is very simple. There  
21 would be 24 healthy adults recruited and randomly  
22 allocated to receive one of the two strains, Quailes  
23 or ISP 1820, which Mike described for you just now.

24           Quailes strain would be given at ten to  
25 the third or ten to the fourth colony forming units

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 with bicarbonate, and recall that in the previous  
2 model this strain was given with skim milk.

3 And then ISP 1820 would be given at a dose  
4 of ten to the three CFU also with bicarbonate.

5 The outcomes would be attack rate for  
6 typhoid fever, incubation period, and a description of  
7 the characteristics of the clinical illnesses.

8 Inclusion criteria are shown here. Our  
9 volunteers would have normal medical histories and  
10 physical exams and normal urinalysis, complete blood  
11 counts, serum chemistries, liver function tests, and  
12 normal electrocardiogram.

13 The exclusion criteria have been generated  
14 to both insure safety and minimize risk of  
15 transmission. So I'll take you through this long  
16 list.

17 The volunteers would not have any  
18 clinically significant history of immunodeficiency,  
19 heart disease, lung disease, endocrine disorder, liver  
20 disease or gall bladder disease, renal or bladder  
21 disease, gastrointestinal disease, disorder of the  
22 reticular endothelial system, neurologic illness,  
23 psychiatric disorder, or drug or alcohol abuse.

24 We would perform ultrasound examinations  
25 of the right upper quadrant to rule out gall bladder

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 pathology, and they must not have had typhoid  
2 vaccinations or typhoid fever. They must not be  
3 allergic to the antibiotics that we might potentially  
4 use beyond ciprofloxacin, including amoxicillin or  
5 trimethaprim sulfamethoxizol; no antibiotic use in the  
6 seven days before challenge; no pregnancy or nursing  
7 mothers; negative HIV serology, Hepatitis C serology,  
8 and Hepatitis B surface antigen; no syphilis serology;  
9 no family history of stroke or atherosclerotic disease  
10 in a family member under the age of 50 years. This is  
11 an attempt at eliminating volunteers who might have  
12 increased risk of endovascular infection during the  
13 bacteremia.

14 Similarly, no history of a significant  
15 heart murmur or systolic murmur greater than Grade 3  
16 or a diastolic murmur of any grade, also an attempt to  
17 eliminate an individual who might have valvular heart  
18 disease and might be at increased risk of the remote  
19 possibility of an endovascular infection.

20 In addition, they must not be commercial  
21 food handlers, day care workers, or health care  
22 workers to decrease the risk of transmission outside  
23 the containment ward.

24 We will screen them for HLA-B27. We will  
25 eliminate those who have young children at home or who

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 have household contacts who are immunocompromised.

2 Their stools will be screened for enteric  
3 bacterial and parasitic pathogens.

4 They will undergo an extended consent  
5 process which will include passing a written  
6 examination, and they'll also have a psychological  
7 examination with a staff clinical psychologist.

8 Now, illness will be defined as shown  
9 here, and contrast this with what Mike has just shown  
10 us for the old model. In the new model, typhoid will  
11 be defined as fever greater than 38.3, persisting for  
12 12 hours without any anti-pyretic medication.

13 Severe typhoid fever will be defined as  
14 any illness which includes any one of the following:  
15 oral temperature greater than 40, systolic blood  
16 pressure less than 85 or lethargy or disorientation.

17 The volunteers will be admitted to our in-  
18 patient ward and undergo 48 hours of orientation and  
19 acclimation before challenge. Assuming that they  
20 meet the criteria for entry to the study, they will be  
21 challenged and remain on our ward for a minimum of 28  
22 days followed by two additional days to document that  
23 their stool cultures are, indeed, negative before  
24 discharge. So we're talking about a 32 day in-patient  
25 stay, which will be very arduous, I think, for healthy

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 volunteers.

2           During that stay, they'll be monitored in  
3 the following ways. They'll have their temperatures  
4 take every six hours. They'll be interviewed daily by  
5 one of the physician investigators, and if indicated,  
6 they'll have a physical exam.

7           Every stool that they pass will be  
8 cultured for salmonella typhi. Blood cultures will be  
9 obtained at the times indicated. Early on they'll  
10 have frequent cultures, 12, 24, 36, 48, 72, 96 hours,  
11 and that we think is the time when we would expect to  
12 see the primary asymptomatic bacteremia that Mike  
13 described.

14           Then beginning on day seven they would  
15 receive daily cultures until antibiotics have been  
16 started for one of the indications.

17           We're also interested in recovering the  
18 organism from the small intestine if possible. So  
19 we'll ask the volunteers to swallow gelatin string  
20 capsules on days seven, ten, and 13, and this capsule  
21 contains a string about the caliber of dental floss,  
22 which after remaining in the small intestine for four  
23 hours can be retrieved, and fluid from that string can  
24 be milked and cultured for salmonella typhi.

25           The management of fever is shown on this

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 slide. At the onset of fever blood cultures, an  
2 additional set of blood cultures will be obtained.  
3 The volunteers will undergo a brief, four-hour fast in  
4 order to prepare them to swallow the gelatin string  
5 capsule so that we can attempt to recover the organism  
6 from the upper small intestine.

7 After the persistence of fever of 38.3 for  
8 12 hours, they'll begin ciprofloxacin, 500 milligrams  
9 b.i.d., for a 14-day course.

10 Also after their fever has persisted for  
11 the 12 hours, they'll have a CBC and the chemistry  
12 shown on the slide. These will be repeated day 28 in  
13 those volunteers whose illnesses met the definition of  
14 fever.

15 The indications for ciprofloxacin are  
16 shown here. As mentioned, any volunteer who meets the  
17 definition of typhoid fever, that is, a 38.3 degrees  
18 Centigrade for 12 hours; all the volunteers beginning  
19 14 days after challenge, regardless of whether or not  
20 they have symptoms; and any volunteer whose blood  
21 culture after day seven is positive, regardless of  
22 whether or not he has symptoms, as soon as we get that  
23 result.

24 We propose not treating volunteers with  
25 positive blood cultures drawn early on, that is days

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 zero to four, who do not have fever because we are  
2 suggesting that bacteremia during that period  
3 represents the primary bacteremia, and if we treat it  
4 then, we will abort the clinical illness that is our  
5 goal to produce. So blood cultures early on we  
6 suggest not be treated.

7 Before discharge, the volunteers must be  
8 well, specifically afebrile, for two days after  
9 completing their antibiotics, and their stool cultures  
10 must be negative for *S. typhi*.

11 If the stool culture is not negative after  
12 14 days of antibiotics, then a second course of  
13 ciprofloxacin would be given. We propose that this be  
14 as an out-patient, and certainly we welcome feedback  
15 on this point.

16 The concern is that after 32 days in the  
17 hospital that it would be difficult to ask volunteers  
18 to stay for an additional two weeks, and that the risk  
19 of transmission outside the hospital in the remote  
20 possibility that their stools are positive after one  
21 course is sufficiently low to justify discharge.

22 After they've left our isolation ward,  
23 they'll be instructed to call or visit our out-patient  
24 facility if they have any febrile illness that occurs  
25 after discharge up until day 90, and if such an

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 illness does occur, the volunteer will return for  
2 interview and examination and blood cultures.

3 The volunteers will have stool cultures in  
4 follow-up on days 60, 90, and 180 after challenge to  
5 insure that they are, in fact, cured of excretion.

6 In addition, we will ask volunteers about  
7 illness in their household contacts at their follow-up  
8 visits at 60 and 90 days to attempt to capture any  
9 illness that might result from transmission after  
10 discharge from the hospital.

11 Finally, there are a number of immunologic  
12 studies which will be done that are listed on this  
13 slide. First, S. typhi antibody measurements at the  
14 times indicated.

15 We'll also be doing exhaustive studies of  
16 cell mediated immunity at the times listed and a  
17 search for specific antibody secreting cells and  
18 looking for fecal antibody at the times shown.

19 Dr. Ivanoff.

20 DR. IVANOFF: Yes. Thank you.

21 I'm Bernard Ivanoff. I am working in WHO  
22 within the Global Program for Vaccine Immunization,  
23 and within this program I am responsible of the  
24 steering committee on diarrheal disease vaccine, and  
25 I would like to show you in three or four

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       transparencies why our program is interested in having  
2       such a human challenge development.

3                 First, the question is: is typhoid fever  
4       important? It seems to be a trivial question. In  
5       this room everybody knows what typhoid fever is, but  
6       when you meet people, you are able to find people who  
7       thought that or think that typhoid fever is an old  
8       disease. It's finished. It's not an important  
9       problem on a global point of view.

10                The second thing I would like to show you,  
11       it was a priority of our program in the Global Program  
12       for Vaccine in relation to typhoid fever.

13                And finally, why does the GPV support  
14       salmonella typhi challenge model in volunteers?

15                Next one.

16                Typhoid fever is not a trivial disease.  
17       It's very important. You see in this pie that typhoid  
18       fever is the second killer with shigella after  
19       rotavirus. In the estimated number of deaths per  
20       year, it's between 2.5 and three million deaths per  
21       year. It's not peanuts. Quite, 600,000 deaths per  
22       year. It's a very important disease.

23                We have antibiotics. That's fine, but the  
24       next transparencies will just show you -- I will not  
25       go into detail -- but just show you in red where

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 you're able to find isolates, between 50 and 80  
2 percent of isolates, multi-drug resistant salmonella  
3 typhi strain distribution in the world. You see that  
4 it's very, very important.

5 And the last example we had recently last  
6 year is this Tajikistan outbreak of typhoid fever  
7 where most of the strain, between 80 or 90 percent of  
8 them, were resistant against chloramphenicol,  
9 cotrimoxizol, and ampicillin. It's a very, very  
10 important disease.

11 It means that we need to have good and  
12 effective vaccine against this disease and to have all  
13 the tools in hand to provide all the necessary answer  
14 to the requests.

15 It's important to see what are the  
16 priorities of our steering committee. They recommend  
17 to have clinical evaluation of existing new candidate  
18 vaccines. That centers on the question, why are you  
19 interested in new vaccine because you have a good  
20 vaccine, Vi polysaccharide and Ty21A.

21 Yes, for polysaccharide and particularly  
22 with a conjugate. Okay, yes, but with a small why for  
23 Ty21A. Why? Because you obliged to give three dose  
24 two days apart. It's a major drawback of this  
25 vaccine, and if you would like to use it in refugee

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 camp situation, for instance, it's very difficult to  
2 come back twice, three times to provide the vaccine.

3 And we have another idea. Maybe it's a  
4 dream, but it's an idea of the committee to have  
5 enteric vaccine. It means that we are willing to  
6 develop one vaccine for most of the pathogenic agents,  
7 and we are recommending the development of a human  
8 challenge model that can be safely used for evaluating  
9 vaccine candidate, and this new vaccine candidate,  
10 particularly, I'm thinking about the one drug dose.

11 Development of parenteral or oral vaccine  
12 that can be effective after one dose and that can be  
13 incorporated in the existing EPI schedule of vaccine  
14 delivery.

15 Another question is why you would like to  
16 have two kinds of vaccines, a parenteral one and an  
17 oral one. It's important for our point of view to  
18 have these two ways, the alternative way. It depends  
19 on the context we would like to introduce the vaccine,  
20 the acceptability, the feasibility of this  
21 introduction of the vaccine.

22 If you look just measles vaccine, you have  
23 just one vaccine. There is some question now. It's  
24 very difficult to reply.

25 For the enteric vaccine, we have two

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 vaccines for typhoid fever. We will certainly have  
2 two vaccines, different vaccines for rotavirus. The  
3 current vaccine in development are given by oral  
4 route, but I can tell you that there is also a high  
5 interest for a parenteral one.

6 As a last priority, the definition of  
7 immunological correlate or immunological marker for  
8 protection, and that's very important to be conducted  
9 in challenge model in a closed ward (phonetic) and  
10 challenge model under own man (phonetic).

11 And just to add what I'm saying, you know  
12 that for typhoid fever these two different vaccines  
13 are stimulating two way of immunity, the mucosal  
14 immune system and the systemic system, and a lot of  
15 people think many, many years ago that why don't  
16 combine the two way to see if there is an announcement  
17 (phonetic) of your vaccine protection. This can be  
18 done in a closed ward in volunteers, not in the field.

19 Next one.

20 So why we are supporting this challenge  
21 model in volunteer? You know that it's more and more  
22 difficult to find a site for enteric vaccine for  
23 diarrheal disease. It's difficult to find a site for  
24 cholera (phonetic), difficult to find a site for  
25 shigella. There is some site. We are looking for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 some country, but it's more and more difficult.

2 From an ethical point of view, you know  
3 that the ethical committee in WHO will never accept to  
4 give a vaccine in a developing country without being  
5 evaluated, tested in industrialized country. That's  
6 an important point of view.

7 Again, the efficacy can be different in  
8 people from industrial country and people from  
9 developing country. We have saw that for cholera  
10 (phonetic) on a concentration of ten to the eighth and  
11 ten to the ninth. The efficacy of the seroconversion  
12 was equivalent if you're increasing one log of your  
13 vaccine in developing country.

14 We also saw something with rotavirus  
15 vaccine, ten to the four, ten to the five.

16 Finally, and to conclude my presentation,  
17 it's important to have the ability to conduct study of  
18 pathogenesis and to better know what is the  
19 pathogenesis of typhoid fever and the immune response  
20 leading to this definition of immunological markers of  
21 protection. That's very important.

22 I thank you for your attention.

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
24 Ivanoff.

25 Does the Committee have questions for any

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 of the sponsor presentations?

2 Well, we have several here. Dr. Hoffman,  
3 you had your hand up first.

4 DR. HOFFMAN: Actually I have a lot of  
5 questions.

6 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, keep them as  
7 concise as possible, please.

8 DR. HOFFMAN: I actually would like to  
9 just make one comment regarding what Mike Levine  
10 stated about the severity of disease.

11 Even in countries where there is very  
12 severe disease, like in Indonesia, the tip of the  
13 iceberg phenomenon that he referred to, meaning that  
14 what you see in the hospital is only a very, very  
15 small percentage of what is in the field, is  
16 absolutely true, and I would present the fact that in  
17 a hospital, say, in Jakarta where ten to 20 percent of  
18 patients presented with severe typhoid fever in a  
19 field study of Ty21A vaccine with 21,000 participants  
20 and hundreds of cases, my recollection is there were  
21 no fatalities and rare, if any, cases of severe  
22 typhoid fever with rapid diagnosis and treatment.

23 My questions have to do with, one, the  
24 microbiological diagnosis, and I'm interested in why  
25 you have omitted days five and six from taking blood

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 cultures, and is that because you don't want to know  
2 because you wouldn't know what to do with the result  
3 on that day?

4 And second, why you're not including PCR.  
5 The old studies showed that at least, I guess, 70 --  
6 only about 75 percent of the patients that have  
7 typhoid fever were blood cultures positive in, which  
8 goes with your criteria for treating without  
9 positivity. Having seen a PCR would perhaps complete  
10 that picture.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Tacket. Please  
12 use the microphone.

13 Your questions are quite relevant Dr.  
14 Hoffman, and they also address some of the FDA's  
15 questions. We can discuss them now as well as later.

16 Dr. Tacket.

17 DR. TACKET: It's a somewhat arbitrary  
18 decision, frankly, and it's not because we didn't know  
19 what to do with the results since we've decided that  
20 any positive blood culture would be treated. We would  
21 treat a blood culture at day five and six.

22 The volunteers are undergoing a number of  
23 invasive procedures, including blood drawing every  
24 single day, and the thought was that the high risk for  
25 positive blood cultures is early on, and after day

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 seven, and we thought we'd give them -- there is an  
2 opportunity for them to recover their veins on days  
3 five and six, but it's not a strong reason that we  
4 chose not to culture blood on those days.

5 We're also, frankly, at the upper limit of  
6 the guidelines for blood drawing, and so that if the  
7 consensus is that we need to survey their blood on  
8 days five and six, that's easily added to the  
9 protocol.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Edwards.

11 DR. TACKET: Actually, excuse me. Mike  
12 wanted to address the PCR issue.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, please.

14 DR. LEVINE: Yeah, I believe in the back  
15 Dr. Jim Nataro from our group -- I think I see him  
16 back there.

17 We intend to do PCR, but we don't believe  
18 that at the moment the primers and the methodology is  
19 such that it's considered a standardized test. We  
20 hope after -- in the course of developing this model  
21 that we may be able to bring it to the point where we  
22 consider it standardized.

23 Jim, would you like to expand beyond that  
24 on the question?

25 DR. NATARO: Just simply to say that there

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 obviously are protocols in the literature. We plan to  
2 evaluate them, in fact, evaluate a couple of different  
3 protocols for --

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Would you come to  
5 the floor, please?

6 DR. NATARO: -- preparation of --

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Could you give your  
8 name and the microphone? This is all being taped, you  
9 know. Everything we say here is taped.

10 DR. NATARO: I'm sorry.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Even the hidden  
12 microphones, beware of.

13 DR. NATARO: Yeah, Jim Nataro, University  
14 of Maryland.

15 We are going to evaluate the published  
16 methods for template preparation and for PCR initially  
17 using flagella primers, and I think that, in fact,  
18 this is one of the important questions that we can  
19 answer, is how PCR correlates with blood culture  
20 results.

21 And in the initial studies we will use  
22 essentially the published protocols, and then if they  
23 turn out to perform less well than blood cultures,  
24 then we have the opportunity of changing those in  
25 future protocols.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Along these lines,  
2 do you have DNA probes to probe feces for the organism  
3 rather than routine cultures?

4 DR. NATARO: We certainly do. That's not  
5 a plan at this point, is to put that into the  
6 protocol, but it is something we can do in the future.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We'll move to other  
8 members of the Committee. Dr. Edwards.

9 DR. EDWARDS: The assessment of immune  
10 correlates and correlates of protection is not an easy  
11 task, and I would like perhaps to have you comment on  
12 what data was obtained by the studies early on in  
13 terms of certainly the antibody to H appeared to have  
14 some protective correlation. Could you discuss  
15 whether antibody in stool was assessed in the earlier  
16 studies?

17 And also could you hum a few bars of what  
18 you're going to do about CMI, please?

19 DR. LEVINE: This is Mike Levine  
20 responding to the first question.

21 When those studies were done in the 1960s,  
22 1970s, in terms of local antibody, IGA, a secretory  
23 IGA had just been discovered. It was in its infancy,  
24 and there were not very serious attempts or very good  
25 attempts to look at local antibody.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           The H antibody correlation was originally  
2           discovered by Bob Gilman and turned out in subsequent  
3           studies to be a consistent finding. Those serum H  
4           antibodies were consequent to individuals having been  
5           immunized with parenteral killed whole cell vaccine  
6           when they were in the military.

7           Dr. Marcello Stein will respond to the CMI  
8           questions.

9           DR. STEIN: Marcello Stein from the Center  
10          for Vaccine Development.

11          What we are planning to do with some of  
12          the neurological studies is related to a number of new  
13          discoveries over the past I would say three or four  
14          years that deal with the simulated immune responses  
15          that were not identified before in typhoid. Those  
16          involve the interferon production, response to  
17          specific antigens, and one that we are particularly  
18          interested in is the presence of cytotoxic to the  
19          lymphocytes that are Class 1 restricted and CDA  
20          mediated.

21          And it is possible being a pathogen that  
22          the presence of this CTL might be a correlate of  
23          protection. We just don't know, but this is the idea  
24          in which to study it.

25          One thing that I may add is that these

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 CTLs have (unintelligible) responses, have been  
2 observed not only in the strength that we have been  
3 discussing this morning, but also in unpublished data  
4 in a vaccine with Ty21A, meaning that at least in  
5 those volunteers that were tested, this particular  
6 response was present.

7 Now, in addition of this specific immune  
8 responses -- and by "specific" I mean specific as a  
9 response to in vitro stimulation with antigen -- we  
10 are going to try to identify which cell populations  
11 are involved by studying in detail the phenotype in  
12 the circulating lymphocytes and other lymphocyte  
13 populations, as well as if possible at all trying to  
14 identify specific immune responses by defined cell  
15 populations.

16 I don't know if that covers the whole  
17 scope of your question.

18 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Greenberg is  
19 next, and then Dr. Adimora.

20 DR. GREENBERG: I wasn't clear -- Harry  
21 Greenberg -- I wasn't clear other than a new strain  
22 what the rationale was for adding another salmonella  
23 strain, considering you've had so much experience with  
24 the first one.

25 Also, why is it important to use a smaller

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 inoculum? What is going to be the advantage?

2 And then finally, what's the history of  
3 blood cultures in the early phase in the old studies?  
4 Were blood cultures positive when they were done on  
5 days one, two, three, and four in the original  
6 studies?

7 DR. LEVINE: Okay. I'll answer the first  
8 question. You answer the second question. I'll  
9 answer the third question, if I can remember them.

10 First question was why a new strain. Very  
11 reasonable question.

12 There was a time in the early 1970s, mid-  
13 1970s even, when salmonella typhi was published or  
14 reputed to be a clone, and it was thought that all  
15 over the world salmonella typhi was essentially the  
16 same.

17 Subsequently, with the development of more  
18 sophisticated molecular fingerprinting methods, it was  
19 found that, in particular, using a pulse field gel  
20 electrophoresis that one could detect differences  
21 amongst salmonella typhi clones.

22 The world's guru on doing this is Dr. Tiki  
23 Pang in Malaysia, and some of the things he has done  
24 has been to show, for example, that in a hyperendemic  
25 area in Papua, New Guinea, there is a particular

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 pattern that was associated with more severe disease  
2 in that local area.

3 So new questions have been raised amongst  
4 typhoidologists about whether there may be, indeed,  
5 subtle differences that have some public health  
6 implications amongst strains, and so we proposed the  
7 possibility of looking at a more modern salmonella  
8 typhi strain.

9 Dr. Tiki Pang was kind enough to do PFGE  
10 on both the Quailes and the ISP 1820 isolates. He has  
11 informed us that they are relatively similar, and that  
12 the two strains have similar or are very similar in  
13 pattern to strains he's found from Malaysia and  
14 Pakistan, for example.

15 So in summary, Harry, there's probably not  
16 a pressing reason, but there have been individuals who  
17 asked about the possibility of looking at a more  
18 modern strain of salmonella typhi.

19 Carol, do you want to answer the second  
20 question which was?

21 DR. GREENBERG: Why is it important to go  
22 from ten to the fifth to ten to the third presumably?

23 DR. TACKET: It's an attempt to make the  
24 model more physiologic or more like natural infection  
25 in that we think that probably three logs of organisms

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 or four logs contaminating a food item in a developing  
2 world might be more realistic than seven or nine logs  
3 that have been used in the past.

4 We have some experience with a shigella  
5 challenge model which had in previous years been --  
6 the shigella inoculum had been administered with skim  
7 milk, and we found that when it was administered with  
8 sodium bicarbonate, the same number of organisms  
9 produced a higher attack rate, say, from 40 to 50  
10 percent with skim milk to 70 to 80 percent with sodium  
11 bicarbonate, which seemed more like the natural  
12 infection.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We'll move on. Dr.  
14 Adimora.

15 DR. LEVINE: The last question I guess I  
16 should respond to.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes. Let's keep  
18 the answers as concise as possible then.

19 DR. LEVINE: Okay. There was very good  
20 experience, high yield, with collection of blood  
21 cultures within the first few days of onset of  
22 clinical illness. So we would expect a high yield,  
23 and bacteriologic methodologies today are better than  
24 they were.

25 DR. GREENBERG: Meaning the first four

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 days after inoculation?

2 DR. LEVINE: I'm sorry, and what was the  
3 question again? What we expect the yield?

4 Oh, very difficult to because this would  
5 be such a low, low level of vaccine. Even the  
6 secondary bacteremia is one to ten organisms per  
7 milliliter, and it's buffy coat associated. I think  
8 it's a long shot, Harry, but short of more invasive  
9 procedures, it's probably the only way we could get an  
10 answer.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

12 Dr. Adimora.

13 DR. ADIMORA: I guess this question is  
14 probably for Dr. Tacket.

15 This relates to preexisting heart disease  
16 and the risk of endocarditis, also preexisting  
17 atherosclerotic disease.

18 I notice in your protocol you exclude  
19 people who have clinically significant heart disease,  
20 and am I correct in assuming that that includes mitral  
21 valve prolapse and bicuspid aortic valve, things that  
22 are pretty common in the population, but aren't  
23 necessarily that pathological?

24 It sounds as if they would be excluded if  
25 they were associated with the appropriate murmur, but

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 those things don't necessarily have that distinctive  
2 murmur.

3 DR. TACKET: If the volunteer has no  
4 symptoms related to heart disease, and if we don't  
5 hear the murmurs that I described in the exclusion  
6 criterion, there's a possibility that volunteers with  
7 those lesions that you just mentioned could be  
8 included. We're not planning to do screening  
9 echocardiograms, for example, to, you know, look at  
10 the anatomy of the valves.

11 The risk of an endovascular infection with  
12 salmonella typhi, unlike non-typhoidal salmonella, is  
13 very, very remote, especially in individuals who are  
14 treated after 12 hours of fever or as soon as possible  
15 after the bacteremia is documented.

16 So I think the risk is sufficiently low,  
17 and the possibility of there being enough turbulence  
18 around a mitral valve prolapse or a congenitally  
19 bicuspid valve is not likely to make doing  
20 echocardiograms, for example, something that would be  
21 reasonable.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Tacket, could  
23 you stay at the microphone and, Dr. Levine, could you  
24 join her because we'll save time in not having you  
25 both bounce up and down.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Dr. Hall next please.

2 DR. HALL: I have two questions. One is  
3 considering the definition of illness, which I like in  
4 the terms of its simplicity, but I wonder if it is a  
5 little bit too simply in terms of what about the  
6 timing. Are there any other ways to define this  
7 illness that could be -- it looks like from a number  
8 of other things.

9 What if it occurred on the first day? Are  
10 other types of cultures being taken? I mean, are  
11 there other signs or symptoms?

12 DR. TACKET: That's a great idea because  
13 we have trouble with concurrent infections in our  
14 vaccine studies, during flu season especially.

15 Part of the reason that we isolate the  
16 volunteers for 48 hours, in addition to continuing the  
17 consent process and the orientation is that they are,  
18 in fact, isolated from community viral pathogens which  
19 might infect concurrently with our challenge.

20 We haven't put into the protocol, for  
21 example, influenza cultures or antigen assays, and  
22 that's something we could consider. However, at the  
23 time that the fever occurs, we've been asked to treat  
24 with ciprofloxacin, and we probably, unless the  
25 consensus is to do otherwise, we wouldn't wait for an

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 influenza culture or even an influenza antigen  
2 determination.

3 So that's kind of a -- we might in  
4 retrospect be able to look back and say, oh, we  
5 treated an influenza when we were, in fact, seeing  
6 early typhoid. So that might be worthwhile.

7 DR. HALL: Well, there could certainly --  
8 I mean if a person had had a lot of respiratory tract  
9 symptoms or signs, it would seem that you may be using  
10 ciprofloxacin for colds or something that would be the  
11 most common cause of a very short illness with fever.

12 The other question I had though is why in  
13 the third strain or the new strain -- let's see -- ISP  
14 1820 there are eight volunteers, if this is enough,  
15 and why the choice of ten to the three was chosen. Is  
16 there a basis for this?

17 I mean my worry would be that with just  
18 only eight volunteers you might miss everything, that  
19 it may not be adequate, and yet it's one-third of this  
20 study at this point.

21 DR. TACKET: The original protocol, an  
22 early iteration had an additional eight volunteers who  
23 got the higher dose with ISP 1820, and that would be  
24 a little more symmetric and look a little more  
25 reasonable.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1           It really is, again, an arbitrary decision  
2 to limit the number of volunteers, the number of  
3 people at risk.

4           Our experience with CVD 906, which is a  
5 derivative of ISP 1820, was that, in fact, it was  
6 virulent. So we suspected that it may be more  
7 virulent than Quailes, and so we chose the lower  
8 strains with the eight volunteers, but it's certainly  
9 not totally logical that that should be done.

10           If I might take a moment to add something  
11 that I deleted from my presentation earlier, and it  
12 refers to your first question about what criteria  
13 might occur that lead to treatment other than fever,  
14 certainly there are a complex of symptoms with typhoid  
15 fever that might occur with a temperature below the  
16 38.3 that we are expecting to see.

17           And we will add to the protocol that any  
18 of the following three -- any three of the following  
19 six symptoms occur that leads to the patient, the  
20 volunteer going to bed, in other words, loss of normal  
21 activity, we would treat them with ciprofloxacin, and  
22 that list of symptoms includes headache, malaise,  
23 anorexia, abdominal pain, nausea/vomiting,  
24 myalgias/arthralgias, or severe typhoid fever as  
25 defined in the protocol, which is a blood pressure

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 less than 85 or disorientation of lethargy.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

3 We'll move on. There are several others  
4 with questions. Dr. Fierer is next. I'm cognizant of  
5 all the others of you who have had your hands up.

6 Please.

7 DR. FIERER: Josh Fierer.

8 I have several questions. It seems to me  
9 that what you want to do is produce infection in these  
10 people. That's the whole point, so that you could  
11 study vaccines. Have you considered using imiprazole  
12 rather than bicarbonate in this modern world?

13 The second is if you really are interested  
14 in detecting the early bacteremia, why don't you draw  
15 more blood? I mean five cc's is really a paltry blood  
16 culture, and that is, you know, in the first three or  
17 four days when you're doing blood cultures.

18 And then I'd like to know why you chose  
19 ampicillin rather than trimethaprim sulfa as your  
20 second line drug, although it could go either way.

21 And I would suggest also that you screen  
22 your volunteers for G6PD deficiency.

23 DR. TACKET: The imiprazole idea is really  
24 interesting. The reason that we used bicarbonate is  
25 because of the tremendous weight of previous

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 experience showing how effective the inoculum of the  
2 various enteric pathogens can be reduced by giving  
3 sodium bicarbonate.

4 It's well tolerated. Imiprazole is yet  
5 another drug, and in the experimental setting, we  
6 would be doing an experiment within the experiment,  
7 and I think we'd prefer to use sodium bicarbonate,  
8 which we're very comfortable with and know achieves  
9 the buffering that we want to achieve, but it's an  
10 interesting idea.

11 Certainly more blood for the blood  
12 cultures would increase the sensitivity of that  
13 microbiological study, and that's something that can  
14 be easily done, but that would mean we would sacrifice  
15 other volumes of blood for other studies because of  
16 the large amount of blood that's already being drawn.  
17 So we'd have to shift around some of our priorities.

18 We can certainly screen for G6PD -- oh,  
19 ampicillin versus trimethaprim sulfa. Amoxycillin,  
20 not ampicillin, but amoxycillin I'm sure is what you  
21 meant, is probably very similar in efficacy to  
22 trimethaprim sulfa, and Mike and I discussed it and  
23 looked at the literature, and we don't see a clear  
24 preference of one over the other, and if you're aware  
25 of such data, we'd be interested in seeing it, but

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 they seem very similar.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

3 Dr. Eickhoff next.

4 DR. EICKHOFF: Two questions for Dr.  
5 Levine. One, regarding the strain selection, the  
6 challenge strain issue again, just to continue with  
7 one more question along that line, the, quote, more  
8 modern, close quote, strain ICP 1820 is already 15  
9 years old. Is there any evidence that you're aware of  
10 that there has been any evolution of new clones since  
11 1983?

12 DR. LEVINE: The new clones are clones  
13 that carry the HI ink plasmid alone or the most recent  
14 strains, which are the buzz of the international  
15 typhoid media in December in Indonesia, which were  
16 these strains that in addition carry this chromosomal  
17 gene mediated resistance to ciprofloxacin.

18 Aside from that plasmid and that  
19 chromosomal resistance, as far as we can tell the  
20 background host strains really do not differ. There's  
21 not been a change.

22 The increased severity, increased case  
23 fatality that has been reported in the past decade is  
24 entirely related to inappropriate and suboptimal  
25 therapy with antibiotics that work as far as we can

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 tell.

2 DR. EICKHOFF: And one further question.  
3 The cipro resistant strains that now you've identified  
4 in Southeast Asia, can we assume that this is, indeed,  
5 a class resistance, and that resistance is also  
6 present or will also be present to the newer  
7 floraquinolones, such as tropoflox and sparflox and so  
8 forth?

9 DR. LEVINE: Regrettably that's an  
10 affirmative.

11 DR. EICKHOFF: And one question for Dr.  
12 Tacket.

13 Regarding possible discharge of people who  
14 are still culture positive by stool culture or rectal  
15 swab, is one negative culture after several days of  
16 positives considered to be negative in your protocol?  
17 It's not the traditional negatives times three or  
18 something like that?

19 DR. TACKET: It actually would be two  
20 negative cultures. Well, it would be all of the  
21 stools that are passed in two days, which will be at  
22 least two rectal swabs if no stool is passed.

23 DR. EICKHOFF: So negative times two would  
24 be considered negative?

25 DR. TACKET: Right, but we would

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 anticipate that after 14 days of cipro that the  
2 cultures would have been negative for some time before  
3 that, stopped the cipro and continued culture for two  
4 more days.

5 DR. EICKHOFF: Is there any quantitative  
6 information available on excretion of S. typhi in  
7 people convalescing from the disease or chronic  
8 carriers?

9 DR. TACKET: Carriers there certainly is.  
10 It's up to ten to the ninth CFU per gram of stool. It  
11 can go from zero to two weeks later, ten to the ninth  
12 colony forming units per gram. So it can be very  
13 high.

14 DR. LEVINE: It's particularly high in  
15 chronic carriers if you get bile, but many of those  
16 individuals, depending upon their stool pattern, can  
17 actually have negative stool cultures, and it's known  
18 that in constipated chronic carriers, the normal flora  
19 are so suppressive that the salmonella typhi are  
20 suppressed below the point of detection with typical  
21 stool culture methodology, but you make them positive  
22 by purging, which is a classical method. So it's very  
23 variable.

24 DR. EICKHOFF: Thank you.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 I'm going to -- you had your hand up?

2 DR. ESTES: My questions have been asked.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

4 Dr. Danis.

5 DR. DANIS: I wanted to ask about the  
6 sample size, and it has been asked about before, but  
7 there is one particular reason I raise it, and that is  
8 in the consent form, the stated purpose of the study  
9 is to determine which of two strains of salmonella  
10 typhi produce illness and to determine the number  
11 between the two.

12 It sounds like you're doing comparisons,  
13 and I'm wondering whether your sample size will allow  
14 you to get to the answer.

15 DR. TACKET: You're right. It's a small  
16 sample size for determining statistical significance  
17 to any one of a number of parameters, in addition to  
18 significant differences in attack rate between those  
19 two strains. The only differences that will be able  
20 to be detected will be very large differences. So  
21 that that's true.

22 In terms of informing the volunteers of  
23 the purpose, certainly that wording could be changed  
24 to say something less than that we're going to compare  
25 attack rates. It could be compare the illness that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 occurs after or some other wording that might be less  
2 confusing.

3 DR. DANIS: Then I wanted to ask the issue  
4 of the need to give antibiotics if all cultures, blood  
5 and stool, are throughout the study negative.

6 DR. LEVINE: Throughout the study the  
7 answer is to maximize safety for the volunteers.  
8 There was that one individual amongst the almost 1,900  
9 subjects in the old model who did not reach the  
10 criteria for treatable disease, and his acute episode  
11 was not treated, and at the time of a relapse  
12 developed gastrointestinal bleeding.

13 Gastrointestinal bleeding, in the view of  
14 most typhoidologists, is something that is rarely  
15 seen, rarely, rarely in the first week of illness, and  
16 therefore, if it was seen that individual, our  
17 assumption is that individual had low level infection  
18 in his peyer's patches, and therefore, we believe that  
19 everyone should be treated. We feel rather strongly  
20 about this.

21 DR. DANIS: I had some questions about the  
22 consent form. Should we leave that for later?

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, please.

24 Dr. Mintz briefly, and then Dr. Breiman  
25 and Snider, and then we'll do FDA presentation. We'll

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 have lots of time for discussion later.

2 I thought you had your hand up, Dr. Mintz.

3 DR. MINTZ: Yes.

4 DR. VANDERPOOL: I did, too.

5 DR. MINTZ: Dr. Mintz, CDC.

6 Two questions. In the literature lately  
7 there's been some discussion about cipro resistant  
8 typhoid fever and how perhaps the NCCLS breakpoints  
9 should be reconsidered, but in vitro and in vivo  
10 correlates of sensitivity may differ. In particular,  
11 some discussion of nalidixic acid resistance as a  
12 marker for clinical resistance or decreased  
13 sensitivity to cipro.

14 And I wondered if you would be able to  
15 provide data on nalidixic acid sensitivity of the two  
16 strains, the two challenge strains you propose. I  
17 would be surprised if they were resistant, but I would  
18 be reassured to know that they're not.

19 DR. LEVINE: Yeah. Jim, do you want to  
20 speak to that?

21 There are certainly cipro sensitive. Did  
22 we test nalidixic acid? Yes, and it's sensitive.

23 DR. MINTZ: Okay.

24 DR. LEVINE: For a decade ciprofloxacin  
25 sensitivity and response to therapy was not a problem.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 This appearance in Southeast Asia is very recent.

2 DR. MINTZ: Yes. And to be sure I  
3 understand the protocol correctly, the stool cultures  
4 that will be done after 14 days of antibiotic therapy,  
5 will there be any delay between the last dose of  
6 ciprofloxacin and the first stool culture? How many  
7 hours do you expect to wait?

8 DR. TACKET: Not many. I know what your  
9 point is.

10 DR. MINTZ: Yes.

11 DR. TACKET: That there'd be an effect  
12 after the last dose of cipro. The last dose of cipro  
13 would be on day 14 after challenge, and then day 15  
14 and day 16 stools will be collected for culture to  
15 document that they're still negative immediately after  
16 ending cipro.

17 DR. MINTZ: As you're probably aware, most  
18 state health departments, for example, before allowing  
19 a food handler to return to his profession would  
20 recommend that the negative cultures be documented at  
21 least 24 or 48 hours after the cessation of antibiotic  
22 therapy.

23 DR. TACKET: Right. I think that's an  
24 excellent point. We're going to be at day 32, and  
25 it's an arduous study, but certainly we could add

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 another 48 hours if that was felt to be important, and  
2 certainly that makes some logical sense.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Breiman.

4 DR. BREIMAN: I have a follow-up question  
5 about the issue of cipro resistance, and I think it's  
6 potentially terribly important if there's induction of  
7 resistance. Do you know what is know about prolonged  
8 therapy with a floraquinolone in actual reduction of  
9 resistance?

10 DR. LEVINE: In vivo with appropriate  
11 therapy in the experience in Latin America, in  
12 particular, there was a large experience gathered with  
13 both cipro and norfloxacin. There was experience in  
14 a number of other countries. This was not a problem.

15 The problem seems to have risen with the  
16 import into several countries in Southeast Asia of  
17 very poor quality cipro that is available in a  
18 promiscuous manner. Also nalidixic acid is available  
19 in those countries as anti-shigella therapy, and in  
20 that unusual environment, that's where the selection  
21 of these cipro resistant strains has appeared.

22 But for years it was not a problem with  
23 appropriate therapy, with good drug in the first years  
24 that cipro came out.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. SNIDER: I had a question about the  
2 inclusion criteria or exclusion criteria. I just  
3 wondered since it appears that certain things, certain  
4 psychiatric illnesses like bipolar disorder, are  
5 grossly underdiagnosed and a person wouldn't  
6 necessarily have a history of hospitalization, if  
7 there would be some kind of screen for those  
8 disorders.

9 It seems to me this is a perfect study for  
10 a person with bipolar disorder who is in the manic  
11 phase, which I don't think you particularly want on  
12 your ward.

13 The other has to do with the monetary  
14 incentive, and I just wondered what your discussions  
15 might have been with your IRB since it's going to be  
16 a little over \$2,000 just for the month which people  
17 would be hospitalized. It seems to me people from  
18 lower socioeconomic circumstances or jobless might  
19 find it particularly attractive. I just wondered if  
20 that had been discussed.

21 DR. TACKET: With regard to uncovering  
22 latent psychiatric illness, that's certainly a risk in  
23 studies like this, especially given the confinement,  
24 the locked door, the lack of contact with family and  
25 friends, and we're very concerned about that.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                   This would be, as I've said over and over,  
2                   a 32-day study minimum, and we're thinking about  
3                   extending it now with additional days waiting for  
4                   stools to turn negative, and so forth.

5                   We have a staff psychologist who will  
6                   interview all of the volunteers, as he does for all of  
7                   our in-patient studies, and we readily discharge  
8                   volunteers on the basis of his recommendations.

9                   Our nursing staff is also very good at  
10                  identifying such potentially difficult patients, and  
11                  they're discharged early on during that 48-hour period  
12                  of acclimatization.

13                  But you're right. That's a great concern.  
14                  I think if we had a psychiatric problem, that we would  
15                  immediately treat that volunteer, and after 14 days  
16                  discharge him.

17                  With regard to the monetary compensation,  
18                  this is an issue that we grapple with frequently, and  
19                  I would be very receptive to feedback about it. The  
20                  volunteers are paid \$75 a day in the hospital and \$20  
21                  a day for a follow-up visit.

22                  The aim is to compensate them as though  
23                  this were a job and not to financially induce them or  
24                  coerce them because it's such an exorbitant amount of  
25                  money, and it's a thin line to walk.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           One of the reasons that I think that we're  
2 probably not overpaying in terms of enticing them or  
3 coercing them because of the huge amount of money that  
4 they're being compensated is because during times such  
5 as the present, when the unemployment rate is very  
6 low, it is very difficult to recruit volunteers. So  
7 that our volunteers are people who have choices.

8           These are not people that have no other  
9 choice in their life. In fact, people that don't have  
10 choices I don't enroll. If you are so destitute and  
11 so illiterate, so unable to work at McDonald's, an  
12 entry level managerial job in a store, if you don't  
13 have choices in your life -- and this is not in the  
14 protocol, but this is our own philosophy -- then you  
15 are not encouraged to go through the consent process  
16 in one of our studies.

17           So the fact that we have so much  
18 difficulty during good economic times makes me think  
19 that we are competing with other jobs in our  
20 community, and in fact, if people have an opportunity  
21 for a long term job, they'll take that rather than a  
22 month on our ward at \$75 a day.

23           But I think that's an excellent point, and  
24 we would very much welcome feedback about it.

25           DR. LEVINE: Dixie, may I add to that as

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 well?

2 We also look upon participation as a  
3 volunteer in vaccine evaluations as a civic duty in  
4 the same way that jury duty is a civic duty, and for  
5 jury duty there is reimbursement.

6 If you look at the level of reimbursement,  
7 this is not dissimilar from participating in jury duty  
8 in a federal jury in this area.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

10 One last question will be from Dr.  
11 Vanderpool, and then we will do Dr. Pratt's  
12 presentation.

13 Please.

14 DR. VANDERPOOL: You mentioned, Dr.  
15 Tacket, that the subjects, quote, will undergo an  
16 extended consent process. I would like for you to  
17 give us information on what that process is and also  
18 to give us more specific information on your  
19 recruitment populations.

20 While I have a problem with the  
21 intelligibility of the consent form for ordinary  
22 people, and we can discuss that much later, and some  
23 information on the form, the real ethics of the issue  
24 comes down to what process is used. So I think we do  
25 need a grid on that, and I do think we need to discuss

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 considerably further the issue of the degree to which  
2 \$2,500 for a month would or would not be coercive for  
3 certain -- a form of coercive or undue persuasion for  
4 some people. That's going to be a tough issue to  
5 resolve.

6 The final issue is just a matter to alert  
7 us to a concern I have, and that is whether these  
8 people are or are not volunteers will depend on the  
9 process in this consent form, and it loads that just  
10 a little bit to call them volunteers before we know  
11 the degree to which they are or are not volunteering.

12 That doesn't suggest that there's some  
13 coercion involved or any undue pressure on your part,  
14 but I think the reason why the phrase "the subjects of  
15 research" or something like that, "adult research  
16 subjects," is a little bit more of a neutral term  
17 until a volunteer proves itself to be an accurate  
18 description.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Can you address  
20 these relatively briefly, Dr. Tacket, or not?

21 DR. TACKET: I'll try. Perhaps the most  
22 important was the description of the consent process.

23 The volunteers are recruited primarily  
24 through advertisements in our local newspapers and by  
25 word of mouth among themselves. They call our

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 recruiting office and are asked one or two very brief  
2 questions: for example, have you been in the  
3 military, which would exclude them if they've had a  
4 typhoid vaccine, and are invited to a seminar which is  
5 given by one of our recruiting staff.

6 The seminar for this study will be an hour  
7 and a half to two hours in a classroom setting. Some  
8 volunteers will get up and leave during the seminar  
9 because it's overwhelming. It's too much.

10 The volunteers that choose to stay to hear  
11 all of the information are then given a copy of the  
12 consent form and sent home and told to contact us. We  
13 don't contact them. In fact, we don't even take down  
14 their names at that point. We just say, "If you think  
15 this is something that is of interest to you, go home  
16 and read the consent and discuss it with your family,  
17 and if you're interested call us back for yet another  
18 visit."

19 When they come back to the out-patient  
20 facility, if they continue to express interest, fine.  
21 If they have questions, we discuss those with them.  
22 If they would like to go ahead with the process, they  
23 have their screening blood work done, including things  
24 like HIV and other serologies which would absolutely  
25 eliminate them.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           They undergo a one-on-one interview with  
2           the recruiter, during which time the recruiter asks  
3           specifically what is S. typhi, what are the symptoms  
4           that you're going to get, what is the likelihood that  
5           you could spread this to your family, what is the  
6           likelihood of your becoming -- what's a carrier, what  
7           does that mean, and there's a one-on-one process in  
8           which these issues are discussed, and the volunteer is  
9           sent home again.

10           If the volunteer chooses to continue in  
11           the process, then he or she calls back, and they make  
12           an appointment for a physical exam when they come back  
13           in and meet the physician investigators, undergo a  
14           physical exam, and have any screening blood that needs  
15           to be repeated, and further discussions and questions  
16           are asked in an informal way.

17           And then they're sent home again, and if  
18           they are still interested, they on their own  
19           initiative come on the day of admission to the  
20           hospital, and for 48 hours there is a period of  
21           further discussions and opportunity for questions  
22           before the challenge occurs.

23           During that 48 hours they have screening  
24           bloods completed, electrocardiograms, interviews with  
25           Dr. John Reed, our clinical psychologist.     The

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 clinical nurses on the ward get to know the  
2 volunteers.

3 There's yet another orientation seminar by  
4 the physician investigator, which is, again, an hour  
5 or more process in which all of the risks and  
6 procedures are discussed pretty much in the consent  
7 form. The consent form is read aloud by the group  
8 and to the group in the presences of the physician  
9 investigator. Questions and answers are exchanged.  
10 The consent form is signed, and that becomes the  
11 consent form of record.

12 There's also a nursing orientation when  
13 procedures are described in detail. The gelatin  
14 string capsule is brought out and showed to everybody,  
15 for example. The volunteer gets to taste the food and  
16 sleep on the bed, and if it's acceptable to him and he  
17 has no further questions, then he's enrolled in the  
18 study for the challenge.

19 DR. LEVINE: Can I add two brief things?

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, please, Dr.  
21 Levin.

22 DR. LEVINE: Which I think are important.  
23 There are two aspects to informed consent. One is the  
24 consent; the other is informed.

25 With respect to informed, despite all of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 these descriptions and reading a consent form and  
2 answering of questions, the volunteers must pass an  
3 examination, a written examination that covers the  
4 procedures, the rationale, the risks, the benefits.  
5 If they don't pass, no matter how motivated they are,  
6 they don't participate in the study because we don't  
7 have an evidence that, in fact, they understood.

8 In terms of the consent aspect, this is  
9 not different in any way from the studies that involve  
10 malaria challenge or cholera challenge or shigella  
11 challenge. It's the same process. It's not in any  
12 way an inducive (phonetic) or coercive environment.

13 Although \$2,000 for 30 days' participation  
14 may seem like a large sum, think of it as compensation  
15 per day just like jury duty. There's a lot that  
16 they're giving by being enclosed on this ward during  
17 that time, and they deserve to receive some minimal  
18 compensation as they do for participating in a jury  
19 duty.

20 If it's a short jury, then it's a small  
21 compensation. If it's long, it adds up to more.

22 DR. VANDERPOOL: I guess in the State of  
23 Maryland you get considerably more for jury duty than  
24 the State of Texas.

25 (Laughter.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. VANDERPOOL: But I understand. Your  
2 answers are very thoughtful, and thank you very much,  
3 and I'm impressed by the consent process. I think  
4 we'll need to revisit these issues as the day goes on.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: As the morning goes  
6 on, Dr. Vanderpool.

7 (Laughter.)

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We will only be  
9 discussing this issue this morning.

10 Since we're all very hot intellectually  
11 now, I want to continue the theme with Dr. Pratt's  
12 presentation. We will not have the break at the  
13 anticipated time. I don't want to interrupt the  
14 thought processes. Everyone is very sensitive to  
15 several of the issues that Dr. Pratt will be bringing  
16 up.

17 Dr. Pratt.

18 DR. PRATT: Dr. Tacket has described the  
19 protocol. I would like to briefly summarize and point  
20 out some protocol related issues before addressing  
21 issues relating generally to the challenge model.  
22 However, it seems that many of the issues have already  
23 been touched upon. So I'll go through this quickly.

24 The proposed study is a randomized dose  
25 ranging infectious challenge model to be conducted in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 patient in an isolation facility. Subjects are to be  
2 healthy, male or female, 18 to 40 years old.

3 There are a number of exclusion criteria  
4 that Dr. Tacket has gone through. So I'll skip over  
5 those now.

6 The inocula have also been discussed, and  
7 the Quailes strain was used in the earlier challenge  
8 models and was isolated from the bile of a chronic  
9 carrier, while the ISP 1820 strain was isolated from  
10 the blood of an infected child.

11 The initial study is of 24 patients --  
12 excuse me -- 24 subjects, and subjects will be  
13 challenged, monitored, and treated during, I guess, a  
14 32-day in-patient observation period with three years  
15 of follow-up planned.

16 Patient monitoring will include body  
17 temperature measurements every six hours, blood  
18 cultures on the schedule already discussed, as well as  
19 stool cultures daily during in-patient and then after  
20 two, three, and six months.

21 And subjects will be treated with  
22 ciprofloxacin, 500 milligrams given orally twice a day  
23 for 14 days if temperature is greater than 38.3  
24 degrees persisting for 12 hours or blood cultures  
25 positive on days seven through 14, and then all

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 subjects will be treated on day 14 if not already  
2 receiving antibiotics.

3 The primary endpoints are attack rate and  
4 typhoid fever or -- excuse me -- attack of typhoid  
5 fever or severe typhoid fever where typhoid fever is  
6 defined by temperature greater than 38.3 degrees  
7 Centigrade and severe typhoid fever is defined by any  
8 one of fever greater than 40 degrees Centigrade,  
9 systolic blood pressure less than 80 millimeters  
10 mercury or signs of lethargy or disorientation.

11 The specific aspects of the protocol to  
12 consider are that no blood cultures are to be obtained  
13 on days five and six, as Dr. Hoffman pointed out, and  
14 treatment decisions in the first week are based solely  
15 on fever, while in the second week either fever or  
16 bacteremia will be the basis of treatment.

17 The consequence of this plan is that  
18 bacteremia in the afebrile subject will not be  
19 detected on days five and six, and any subject who is  
20 not febrile before day seven will not be treated  
21 regardless of bacteremia or other symptomatology.

22 However, on hearing Dr. Tacket, I guess  
23 symptoms will be considered in a revised protocol.

24 Another aspect of the protocol to consider  
25 is that subjects who continue to excrete typhi in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 their stools at the end of 32 days will be released  
2 into the community on out-patient antibiotics.

3 A final point regarding the protocol is  
4 that it appears that all 24 subjects may be enrolled  
5 and inoculated simultaneously. If adverse events  
6 occur more commonly or are greater severity than  
7 anticipated, it may not be possible to stop the study  
8 or modify the inoculum in order to prevent the entire  
9 cohort from exposure to an excessive risk.

10 In assessing risks of the proposed model,  
11 it may be useful to examine some of the safety  
12 findings from the previous challenge model. A number  
13 of non-IND human challenge studies involving 1,886  
14 inmate volunteers were conducted over a 15-year period  
15 ending in 1974. Infectious doses ranged from ten to  
16 the third to ten to the ninth colony forming units of  
17 the Quailes strain.

18 A dose of ten to the fifth CFU was deemed  
19 most appropriate for trials of eight different  
20 candidate vaccines. The incubation period following  
21 inoculation to fever ranged from three to 52 days at  
22 ten to the fifth dose, and 25 percent were ill within  
23 the first week.

24 A summary report provided with sponsor's  
25 background package states that 235 of the 672 subjects

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 receiving ten to the fifth developed fever greater  
2 than 37.8, and that 200 met the treatment criteria of  
3 fever greater than 39.4.

4 Various treatment regimens were used, most  
5 containing chloramphenicol or ampicillin.

6 The summary report also states bacteremia  
7 was demonstrated in 75 percent of those with fever and  
8 relapse defined here is two consecutive febrile days  
9 following defervescence occurred in 35 percent of 124  
10 volunteers receiving antibiotics.

11 Relapse occurred up to 63 days after the  
12 last febrile day.

13 It was reported in some early studies that  
14 nearly five percent of subjects had asymptomatic  
15 bacteremia occurring on day four or later, and five  
16 afebrile subjects were bacteremic for up to five days  
17 with symptoms of headache, cramps, or abdominal pain.

18 Liver transaminase levels were reported as  
19 elevated in about 50 percent of subjects by day seven  
20 of illness, and platelet counts were less than 100,000  
21 in about 30 percent by day four of illness.

22 Vaccine recipients and controls were  
23 considered together in the reporting of disease as  
24 there was no discernable difference in their clinical  
25 course.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           No deaths occurred. One subject developed  
2 a pleural effusion requiring thoracentesis. One  
3 subject developed gastrointestinal bleeding and a six  
4 percent fall in hematocrit. One subject had diarrhea  
5 requiring intravenous fluids both during the acute  
6 phase and during relapse, and latent diabetes became  
7 manifest in another, and one subject had a psychotic  
8 reaction on the fifth day of disease.

9           One subject became a long term carrier and  
10 was excreting salmonella typhi in stools for over two  
11 years. He subsequently underwent a curative  
12 cholecystectomy.

13           Safety data reporting from these studies  
14 is limited. Protocols and original data were not  
15 reviewed by FDA. Numerous individual laboratory  
16 assessments, including bilirubin were not provided in  
17 the summary report, and findings of jaundice and  
18 hepatosplenomegaly which were noted in a publication  
19 from some of the studies were not mentioned in the  
20 summary report.

21           The proposed study has inherent risks in  
22 the sense that subjects will become febrile and  
23 bacteremic. One may reasonably assume that subjects  
24 can give informed consent to the expectation of a  
25 simple febrile illness. It is more difficult to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 assess the risks of serious complications in the  
2 proposed challenge model.

3 This table lists some of the important  
4 complications of untreated or inadequately treated  
5 typhoid fever with estimated time of onset and  
6 approximately incidence, if available. These figures  
7 are compiled mainly from various textbook references,  
8 including Dr. Hoffman's nice chapter in Hunter's  
9 Tropical Medicine.

10 The table illustrates that virtually every  
11 organ system can be affected by salmonella typhi, and  
12 the fact that not 100 percent of patients with typhoid  
13 fever actually has fever reflects differing  
14 definitions of typhoid disease.

15 Some degree of intestinal hemorrhage is  
16 fairly common, and both hemorrhage and intestinal  
17 perforation can occur in the first week of disease,  
18 though typically they occur later.

19 Cardiac complications are fairly rare,  
20 though EKG changes are more common.

21 Meningitis occurs almost exclusively in  
22 neonates and small children.

23 Osteomyelitis and septic arthritis are  
24 late complications, and the incidence figures were not  
25 found. They are probably uncommon.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           Reactive arthritis can occur relatively  
2 early in disease.

3           Neuropsychiatric disorders are well  
4 described and fairly common in some reports.

5           Urinary excretion during infection is  
6 common, occurring in up to 25 percent at some point  
7 during the disease.

8           And some degree of hepatitis is common, as  
9 seen in the previous challenge studies, and it can  
10 occur early in disease.

11          Clinical jaundice occurs in about two  
12 percent.

13          Antibiotics have had little effect on  
14 rates of relapse in the chronic carrier state prior to  
15 the use of quinolone antibiotics, which I'll be  
16 discussing in a moment. Historically chronic carriage  
17 occurred in about one to five percent of cases.

18          Today death due to typhoid fever in the  
19 U.S. is very uncommon. However, in areas where death  
20 is more common, bowel perforation is a frequent  
21 contributing cause of death.

22          It seems likely that early antibiotic  
23 treatment following onset of fever would prevent most  
24 serious complications. However, it may be important  
25 to note that some complications, such as bowel

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 perforation, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, hepatitis,  
2 thrombocytopenia, a psychotic reactions can occur  
3 during the first week of disease.

4 It's also not clear what impact  
5 antibiotics will have on reactive arthritis, which can  
6 occur fairly early in the disease process, and it  
7 should, again, be pointed out in this context that the  
8 protocol does not provide for treatment of bacteremia  
9 without fever in the first seven days after challenge.

10 Some predisposing conditions for the  
11 various complications of typhoid fever are shown.  
12 General risk factors include achlorhydria, bowel  
13 disease, and immunosuppression. Increased risk of  
14 chronic care has been associated with prior antibiotic  
15 use, particularly of chloramphenicol, and this may not  
16 be the case with ciprofloxacin.

17 Gall stones and risk factors for gall  
18 stones, including age greater than 40 and female  
19 gender, are also risk factors for chronic carriage,  
20 and chronic bacteriuria has been associated with  
21 nephrolithiasis and prostatic hypertrophine.

22 Salmonella have an affinity for  
23 endothelial tissue. Atherosclerosis and aortic  
24 aneurysms are risk factors for endarteritis, while the  
25 history of rheumatic heart disease and previous

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 endocarditis are risk factors for typhoid  
2 endocarditis.

3 Osteomyelitis and arthritis and spleen  
4 abscess share common risk factors of sickle cell and  
5 other hemoglobinopathies, systemic lupus and  
6 immunosuppression. As mentioned meningitis is almost  
7 exclusively a neonatal and childhood complication.

8 Risk factors of complications will likely  
9 be reduced by implementation of entry criteria  
10 intended to exclude volunteers with known risk  
11 factors. The sponsors believe the complications of  
12 typhoid fever will not occur in the subjects who meet  
13 entry criteria because they will be treated with  
14 ciprofloxacin after onset of fever.

15 Ciprofloxacin was first approved in the  
16 U.S. in 1987. The specific indication for the  
17 treatment of typhoid fever, enteric fever called by  
18 salmonella typhi, was approved in 1993. The package  
19 insert or drug label for ciprofloxacin also contains  
20 a note that the efficacy of ciprofloxacin in the  
21 eradication of the chronic carrier state has not been  
22 demonstrated.

23 However, accumulating data suggests that  
24 ciprofloxacin is probably the superior antibiotic of  
25 choice for the treatment of disease and the carrier

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 state in most adults with sensitive strains.

2 FDA approval for the treatment of typhoid  
3 fever indication was based on two well controlled  
4 studies of 37 and 104 adult patients. In the smaller  
5 study patients received ciprofloxacin, 750 milligrams  
6 twice daily for 14 days. Early bacteremic relapse  
7 occurred in two of 12, or 17 percent, of evaluable  
8 patients. Failure to eradicate typhi from stools  
9 occurred in one of 18, or 5.6 percent, of evaluable  
10 patients. There was no long term follow-up in this  
11 study.

12 In the larger study conducted at two  
13 sites, patients received 500 milligrams twice daily  
14 for ten days. Bacteriologic eradication was  
15 documented in 78 of 79, or roughly 99 percent, of the  
16 evaluable patients receiving ciprofloxacin. Mean  
17 duration of follow-up in this study was 63 days.

18 However, three nonevaluable patients  
19 withdrew from the ciprofloxacin arm for reasons of  
20 rash, intestinal perforation, and abdominal tenderness  
21 becoming worse on ciprofloxacin. Therefore, the  
22 clinical cure rate did not match the bacteriologic  
23 cure rate due to dropouts and adverse events.

24 Common adverse events listed in the  
25 package insert for ciprofloxacin and considered to be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 drug related include nausea, diarrhea, vomiting,  
2 abdominal pain, and headache. Ciprofloxacin was  
3 discontinued due to adverse events in 3.5 percent of  
4 patients in clinical studies leading to the drug  
5 approval.

6 The package insert also contains warnings  
7 regarding central nervous stimulation, convulsions,  
8 toxic psychoses, fatal interactions with theophylline.  
9 It also raises caffeine levels considerably, and  
10 pseudomembranous colitis and anaphylaxis.

11 Among post market reports of adverse  
12 events reported through the Med Watch system, rash and  
13 pleuritis were most common. Creatinine elevations,  
14 convulsions, and kidney failure were among the most  
15 common reported adverse events. There have been 143  
16 episodes of anaphylaxis also reported. The incidence  
17 rates for these post marketing reports cannot be  
18 determined.

19 Data cited by the sponsor as demonstration  
20 that ciprofloxacin is highly effective in the  
21 treatment of the carrier state shows that 11 of 12, or  
22 92 percent, were treated successfully with 750  
23 milligrams twice daily for 28 days.

24 The one treatment failure occurred in a 24  
25 year old asymptomatic woman who was said to be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 compliant with the medication. The isolated strain  
2 was sensitive to ciprofloxacin, and blood antibiotic  
3 levels were within the therapeutic range. Although  
4 not identified as having biliary disease prior to  
5 treatment, the woman underwent cholecystectomy two  
6 years after completing therapy and was found to have  
7 gall stones at that time.

8 This case raises concerns that potential  
9 carriers may not be identified and excluded from study  
10 participation, and that successful treatment of the  
11 carrier state with ciprofloxacin is not universal. I  
12 think that that woman did not have an ultrasound exam  
13 prior to treatment though.

14 Another woman was found to be excreting  
15 typhi during follow-up. This strain was of a  
16 different phage type, and it was concluded that this  
17 represented a reinfection.

18 Adverse events among the remaining  
19 subjects included one who stopped treatment due to an  
20 urticarial reaction, one who stopped therapy for  
21 falling hemoglobin thought to be drug related. Other  
22 adverse reactions included decreases in hemoglobin in  
23 two additional patients, gastrointestinal bleeding  
24 with falling hemoglobin, and one patient who developed  
25 candidal vaginitis while on therapy.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           In assessing risks of secondary cases in  
2 the community, it is worth repeating that eradication  
3 of typhi by ciprofloxacin may not be 100 percent.  
4 According to protocol, subjects with positive stool  
5 cultures after an in-patient course of ciprofloxacin  
6 would be discharged from the isolation facility on  
7 out-patient antibiotic therapy.

8           In the event that a subject continues to  
9 excrete salmonella typhi after discharge, the sponsors  
10 assess the risk to the community as small due to the  
11 low infectivity of salmonella typhi without buffer and  
12 the level of hygiene and sanitation in the U.S.

13           In this context it should be noted that  
14 infants may be infected at lower inocula due to their  
15 higher gastric pH, and that infants are at increased  
16 risk of meningitis if infected, and as small children,  
17 the elderly, individuals with HIV infection, and other  
18 immunocompromised people are at increased risk of  
19 serious disease.

20           And as a further note, ciprofloxacin is  
21 not indicated for use in children.

22           Regarding the consent form, this has been  
23 touched on already. The consent form clearly states  
24 that no benefit to the subject will incur as a result  
25 of study participation. Subjects may derive some

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 satisfaction from contributing to medical research and  
2 the development of a new typhoid vaccine, and the  
3 subjects will receive monetary compensation.

4 The risk section of the consent form  
5 mentions the chronic carrier state, intestinal  
6 perforation and intestinal bleeding as possible  
7 complications. Other complications are referred to  
8 generally as follows. Although other complications  
9 involving almost every organ of the body have been  
10 described, these occur rarely in natural disease and  
11 almost exclusively in persons who have been ill for a  
12 long time without antibiotic treatment. Death as a  
13 possible complication, it was not mentioned.

14 A stated primary objective of the  
15 challenge model is to identify promising vaccine  
16 candidates for further evaluation in large scale field  
17 trials. Traditional strategies to identify promising  
18 candidate vaccines rely upon safety and immunogenicity  
19 studies in animals and humans. Vaccine candidates  
20 which induce high titered antibody to a pathogen  
21 specific antigen might be considered worthy of further  
22 development.

23 If it is known that antibodies to a  
24 particular antigen are associated with protection from  
25 disease, immunogenicity studies can be highly

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 predictive of protective efficacy.

2 Three vaccines are currently licensed in  
3 the U.S. for the prevention of typhoid fever. Typhim  
4 Vi, manufactured by Pasteur Milieux, is an  
5 intramuscularly administered vaccine which was  
6 licensed in 1994. It's composed of the Vi capsular  
7 polysaccharide from the Ty2 strain. It's indicated  
8 for children two years of age and older.

9 Efficacy in field trials has ranged from  
10 55 to about 74 percent. Current recommendations for  
11 boosters are on a two-year schedule.

12 Vivotif Berna, manufactured by Swiss Serum  
13 and Vaccine Institute, is a live oral attenuated  
14 vaccine, strain Ty21A. It was licensed in 1989.  
15 Enteric coated capsules are ingested on four days over  
16 a one-week span. It's indicated in adults and  
17 children age six and older, and protective efficacy in  
18 field trials has ranged from 42 to 67 percent, with  
19 boosters recommended every five years at this time.

20 Typhoid vaccine manufactured by Wyeth-  
21 Ayerst is administered subcutaneously. It's a heat  
22 and phenol inactivated vaccine of the Ty2 strain. Two  
23 doses four weeks apart make up the primary series.  
24 It's indicated for the immunization of typhoid fever.  
25 The manufacturer does not recommend dosing below six

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 months of age.

2           Based on data from field studies, it is  
3 estimated to have -- excuse me. Based on field  
4 studies of similar preparations, it's estimated to  
5 have an efficacy of 50 to 70 percent or greater, with  
6 boosters recommended every three years.

7           Local and systemic reactions are common  
8 with this vaccine.

9           Protective efficacy for each licensed  
10 vaccine was demonstrated by testing in highly endemic  
11 areas.

12           Another candidate typhoid vaccine is  
13 currently in Phase 3 efficacy studies in an endemic  
14 area.

15           The licensed whole cell typhoid vaccine  
16 and the Vi capsular polysaccharide vaccine and the  
17 candidate vaccine now in Phase 3 trials have been  
18 developed without testing in a human challenge model.

19           Ty21A was administered to inmate  
20 volunteers in challenge studies pre-licensure, and  
21 these studies may have facilitated development of the  
22 oral vaccine.

23           The parameters of the immune response  
24 which correlate with protection provided by Ty21A are  
25 not know. It may also be difficult to identify

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 correlates of protection for other candidate vaccines,  
2 a challenge model which might facilitate development  
3 of some of these vaccine candidates.

4 Another stated primary objective of the  
5 challenge study is to demonstrate whether candidate  
6 vaccines can protect immunologically naive subjects,  
7 such as travelers.

8 In the United States, about three to 400  
9 cases of typhoid fever occur each year, and about 70  
10 percent of these are acquired while traveling  
11 internationally. ACIP recommends typhoid vaccination  
12 prior to travel to endemic areas, with preference  
13 stated for the Ty21A and the Vi capsular  
14 polysaccharide vaccines due to their less  
15 reactogenicity than the whole cell preparation.

16 In a recent survey of U.S. microbiology  
17 laboratories conducted by CDC, at CDC by Dr. Mintz and  
18 colleagues to assess the prevalence of antibiotic  
19 resistance and other risk factors of infection, it was  
20 found that about 80 percent of 200 isolates came from  
21 travelers, and that three percent of these isolates  
22 came from travelers who had received the oral typhoid  
23 vaccine. None had reported receiving the Vi capsular  
24 polysaccharide or whole cell vaccine.

25 These data are perhaps more informative

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 about the lack of utilization of licensed vaccines  
2 than about their protective efficacy among travelers  
3 since the number receiving vaccine who did not become  
4 ill is not known.

5           Nevertheless, it appears that one could  
6 conclude from these data, though it was not a  
7 conclusion of the authors, that if a more effective  
8 vaccine were to replace those in current use by  
9 travelers who elect to be vaccinated, an additional  
10 six to 12 cases of typhoid fever per year in the U.S.  
11 might be prevented.

12           Whether the benefit of a better vaccine  
13 for travelers alone offsets risks faced by study  
14 participants in the challenge studies deserves careful  
15 consideration.

16           Dr. Levine had mentioned a number of human  
17 challenge studies which have been conducted under the  
18 IND. Some of these are for pathogens restricted to  
19 mucosal surfaces or result in self-limiting disease.  
20 Models that we've had experience with in vaccine are  
21 the cholera, shigella, and ETEC models. A number of  
22 the models that he presented were therapeutic models.

23           Typhoid infections differ importantly from  
24 some of these other challenge models by their  
25 invasiveness and potential for multiple organ

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 involvement. A notable human challenge model of  
2 serious infection with systemic involvement is the  
3 malarial challenge model. Aside from the obvious  
4 difference that one is a gram negative bacteria and  
5 the other is a protozoa, the contexts differ in that  
6 three vaccines of demonstrated efficacy are licensed  
7 for typhoid fever while no vaccine has been licensed  
8 or shown to be effective for malaria.

9 But regardless of the rationale for other  
10 human challenge models, the proposed salmonella typhi  
11 challenge model deserves critical assessment based on  
12 its own merits.

13 Then a final point regarding the scope of  
14 studies using the model. The initial study proposes  
15 to inoculate 24 subjects. Should the model proceed,  
16 a substantially larger number of subjects would likely  
17 be challenged depending on the number of vaccine  
18 candidates to be tested, the number of time points  
19 following vaccination that subjects will be challenged  
20 so that duration of protection might be assessed, and  
21 the number and kinds of investigations into the  
22 pathogenesis of salmonella typhi infections the  
23 investigators may wish to undertake.

24 So some summary points to consider in  
25 your deliberations are:

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1           Number one, the probability of serious  
2 typhoid disease amongst study participants in the  
3 study is probably low.

4           Gastrointestinal hemorrhage and bowel  
5 perforation are among some of the complications of  
6 typhoid fever which can occur fairly early in the  
7 disease process.

8           Number three, relapse in short term or  
9 chronic carriage after ciprofloxacin treatment occur  
10 less frequently than with other antibiotics, but  
11 eradication of salmonella typhi is not universal.

12           Ciprofloxacin therapy is associated with  
13 its own risks which can be serious.

14           And risks for secondary cases within the  
15 community should also be considered. The community  
16 may be placed at risk without their knowledge or  
17 consent.

18           Subjects will derive no medical benefit  
19 from participation. Vaccine candidates for typhoid  
20 fever have been identified and developed in the past  
21 without invoking human challenge studies.

22           Licensure of three typhoid vaccines  
23 approved for use in the U.S. has been based on results  
24 of well controlled field efficacy studies.

25           And lastly, vaccination for typhoid fever

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 is currently recommended by ACIP for travelers to  
2 endemic areas, and most cases of typhoid fever among  
3 U.S. travelers to endemic areas at least in 1996  
4 occurred in people who did not receive a licensed  
5 vaccine.

6 At this time I would like to again present  
7 the questions posed to the Committee.

8 Number one, does information likely to be  
9 gained from this model justify the risks to subjects  
10 and the community?

11 Number two, if yes, please discuss any  
12 recommendations for modifying the study protocol and  
13 consent form. Specifically, please comment on the  
14 criteria proposed for initiating antibiotic treatment,  
15 that is, temperature greater than 38.3 degrees  
16 Centigrade for 12 hours or bacteremia on days seven  
17 through 14.

18 (b) Please comment on whether blood  
19 cultures should be obtained on days five and six.

20 (c) Please comment on the proposal for  
21 out-patient antibiotic treatment of subjects who  
22 continued to have positive stool cultures after an  
23 initial in-patient course.

24 (d) Are there other changes to the  
25 protocol entry criteria, monitoring procedures, or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 study design which you would suggest, for example,  
2 staging of enrollment, stopping rules, monitoring of  
3 in-patient and out-patient contacts.

4 And lastly, does the consent adequately  
5 address the potential risks to volunteers?

6 And lastly, I would like to acknowledge  
7 the other members of the review team: Lydia Falk,  
8 Dennis Kopecko, and Carolyn Deal.

9 Thank you for your attention. We look  
10 forward to your discussions.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you very  
12 much, Dr. Pratt.

13 I think we'll take a break now while  
14 you're thinking about these questions. Ten minutes,  
15 please.

16 (Whereupon, the foregoing matter went off  
17 the record at 10:29 a.m. and went back on  
18 the record at 10:45 a.m.)

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Ms. Cherry has an  
20 announcement first.

21 MS. CHERRY: Before all of you sit down,  
22 let me say that I realize that this room does pose  
23 some challenges. So please feel free to move around  
24 so that you can see or hear.

25 The other things is that we have an open

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 public hearing scheduled for this morning. We went  
2 right into the program, but at this time if there is  
3 anyone in the audience who wishes to make a public  
4 statement, let's do it now.

5 Is there anyone that would like to make a  
6 statement for the record?

7 (No response.)

8 MS. CHERRY: If not, then I'll return  
9 control to Dr. Ferrieri.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Nancy.

11 I want to thank our sound engineer for  
12 helping us at the podium. Stimulated by Dr. Levine  
13 booming voice, we decided we had a little problem  
14 there, and we now have sort of a muffler to deflect  
15 the wind that we're blowing into the microphone there.

16 (Laughter.)

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Apologies if it  
18 annoyed anyone earlier in the morning.

19 Well, we've heard a great deal of  
20 challenging information presented by the sponsors, as  
21 well as challenging questions from FDA. I think we  
22 should note before we get into any detail that we have  
23 to deal with question one from Dr. Pratt. If the  
24 answer is no, that the information is not likely to  
25 justify the risk, then you have a very prolonged

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 lunch.

2           However, if we vote yes, then we will  
3 proceed with the other questions, and so I'd like to  
4 open up discussion at the table. Some of you may not  
5 feel that you've had adequate opportunity earlier this  
6 morning to voice your opinions or to ask any pertinent  
7 questions, but I'd repose the question we would  
8 address this part of the meeting to: does the  
9 information likely to be gained from the challenge  
10 model justify the risks to subjects and the community?

11           So if there are questions raised that's  
12 pertinent to this rather than other details that are  
13 later.

14           Dr. Edwards, Dr. Hall. Dr. Clements-Mann,  
15 did you have your hand up also?

16           Dr. Edwards first.

17           DR. EDWARDS: I wonder if it would be  
18 possible to do this study in several steps to give 24  
19 people typhoid and if they all get sick may be  
20 somewhat problematic, and also looking at the data  
21 from previous studies, suggesting that ten to the  
22 third was not infectious, certainly the addition of  
23 bicarbonate might make it infectious.

24           I feel that perhaps I might be a little  
25 more comfortable if we would start with two or four

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 subjects rather than 24. Is that logistically  
2 possible or is that something that could be done?

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Levine, would  
4 you like to address that? And then maybe Dr. Pratt  
5 may have an opinion on this.

6 DR. LEVINE: That is a possibility, of  
7 course. The reason that Dr. Tacket and I had come up  
8 with this particular design was in an attempt to  
9 maximize the information gained with a very long,  
10 complicated trial that will tie up the research  
11 isolation ward and the nurses for a very long time.

12 We are comfortable with the expected  
13 clinical response to these dosages to be administered  
14 with bicarb., the expectation. The reason we're  
15 comfortable is it can't be different in attack rate  
16 from what was seen with seven or nine logs without a  
17 buffer, where there was a 95 percent attack rate.

18 One clear message that came from Dick  
19 Hornick's New England Journal review was that once  
20 clinical illness occurred, it was the same range and  
21 severity irrespective of the dose, and the very nice  
22 review by Judith Glenn a few years ago in Epidemiology  
23 Infection looking at attack rates and severity from  
24 water borne outbreaks that showed the same thing, that  
25 where water borne and food borne outbreaks -- food

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 borne outbreaks had shorter incubation, presumably  
2 larger inoculum. The clinical severity was the same  
3 irrespective of outbreak.

4 So it would be possible to do that, but we  
5 don't think that that's really necessary; that we  
6 could, with the expenditure of time and resources  
7 actually gain much more information within a single  
8 trial.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hall.

10 DR. HALL: I just would like to sort of  
11 for that first question be very much in favor of this  
12 study in terms of not looking at it as just the idea  
13 of perhaps preventing a few infections in the United  
14 States, but what we may learn from this in terms of  
15 the pathogenesis of the disease, that certainly this  
16 disease is beyond our borders here, and that although  
17 it is a small study and I have concerns about how much  
18 information one can get initially, I think there are  
19 very important pieces of information that do not  
20 require statistical significance.

21 For instance, are they infected? When are  
22 they infected? At what doses?

23 And so that a limited study initially I  
24 think is important, and whether based on that to go  
25 on, but overall I think the broad potential of this

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 study is greater than perhaps we have noted so far.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

3 Dr. Clements-Mann.

4 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes. I think the  
5 other aspect of this, I mean, it's clearly my  
6 impression that the initial challenge study that was  
7 done that demonstrated the protective effect of the  
8 Ty21A was really turning out to be pivotal in moving  
9 that vaccine forward because there had been another  
10 vaccine that had been shown to be ineffective, and the  
11 whole concept of the live attenuated vaccine was  
12 almost abandoned at that point.

13 So that it actually did provide a proof of  
14 principle, albeit without correlates of immunity, that  
15 made it possible to move into the field ultimately  
16 with the vaccine.

17 Now, the other thing that I don't think  
18 was mentioned as much today is that every time one  
19 changed the vaccine formulation or number of doses or  
20 age group or geographic area, one had to repeat the  
21 field trials, and so that if ultimately there is an  
22 ability to demonstrate in a very small number of  
23 people proof of principle that eventually could be  
24 correlated with the trials in the field, it could  
25 really make a big difference in terms of selecting

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 from these potential candidates.

2 And then one other point I'd like to make  
3 is that it would be very helpful for the use of  
4 salmonella vectors to express other antigens to be  
5 able to get that information of what the value of the  
6 vector is in these kinds of studies.

7 And then finally, I would just like to say  
8 that the University of Maryland group has a tremendous  
9 amount of experience, long term experience among the  
10 investigators in conducting these trials in the  
11 highest -- with the highest ethical and clinical  
12 standards, and that if anyone can do it, they can.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thanks, Mary Lou.

14 Other points relative to information  
15 gained versus potential risk? Dr. Hoffman.

16 DR. HOFFMAN: Two points. One is it was  
17 mentioned that there's 500,000 deaths a year in the  
18 world due to typhoid fever, an estimate. Those deaths  
19 occur mainly in late adolescents and early adults,  
20 young adults. So the impact on society of those  
21 deaths in the developing world is enormous. They're  
22 the people that the society has invested the most in  
23 and has gotten the least from.

24 So that it's quite different in terms of  
25 that, and so I think that justifies a new type of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 vaccine that could be used for them.

2           The second, I'd like to point out that  
3 sort of complementary to what Mary Lou said, with the  
4 Vi vaccine developed by John Robbins, that vaccine was  
5 developed in the late 1970s. There was no challenge  
6 model. The first study was done -- field study was  
7 not done until the mid-'80s in Nepal and then in South  
8 Africa, and it's quite likely that had there been a  
9 challenge model, that vaccine would have been tested  
10 much more rapidly here, moved to the field, perhaps  
11 studied more extensively in the field than it has  
12 been, and even perhaps compared to the Ty21A or even  
13 combined with it, and we would have seen a much more  
14 rapid movement into the licensure phase if we had had  
15 a challenge model.

16           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

17           Dr. Snider.

18           DR. SNIDER: I would like to just clarify  
19 a couple of points, which I think the previous  
20 comments have gotten to, but I think that we should  
21 understand it explicitly.

22           There have been some comments about the  
23 fact that it's difficult to find populations to do a  
24 trial in, and that seems to have been given as a  
25 rationale for doing this particular model or at least

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 I'll say it left me with that impression.

2 And I don't think that is really relevant.

3 It seems to me that if there are not populations which  
4 we can do trials, then doing this challenge model  
5 clearly shouldn't be done because I don't think we're  
6 going to license vaccine based on this challenge  
7 model.

8 I mean, you know, the ability to  
9 generalize from these populations that we're going to  
10 study here to other populations is one issue. The  
11 sample sizes are other issues, et cetera.

12 So it clearly is a model, and it's a way  
13 of screening, as I understand it, candidate vaccines  
14 for use in field trials.

15 The other point that was made that I would  
16 take issue with is that you can't do studies in  
17 developing countries unless you do them in the United  
18 States. I think that is certainly not a principle  
19 which the CDC Ethics Subcommittee, which includes the  
20 authors of the most popular current bioethics text,  
21 would agree with.

22 I mean I'm not saying we shouldn't  
23 participate by any means, and participate by means of  
24 participating by having U.S. subjects participate in  
25 this challenge model, but just as a general principle,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 again, I don't think it's necessarily relevant. There  
2 are plenty of issues and problems that occur only in  
3 developing countries for which studies in the United  
4 States would be irrelevant or unnecessary to do.

5 So that having been said, I think with  
6 regard to a more direct response to the question, I  
7 think I would generally lean toward saying that, yes,  
8 the information likely to be gained from the challenge  
9 model would justify it, with some of the modifications  
10 that have been suggested, and we'll get into that.

11 So it's a tentative yes, pending responses  
12 to some of the questions we had of the investigators  
13 about how they screen and some of the modifications in  
14 the protocol that are being considered.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

16 Yes, Dr. Breiman.

17 DR. BREIMAN: Sort of along that line, I  
18 think when considering the risks to the subjects and  
19 the community, it seems like a couple of ideas came up  
20 that might be relevant to try to minimize those risks.  
21 I guess the thing that I've been most worried about,  
22 even though we've been reassured, is the idea that  
23 early in the study people will have at least a  
24 likelihood of primary bacteremia which may seed  
25 certain organs, and although there is a screening

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 ultrasound done for the gall bladder, I wonder whether  
2 there also should be other screens done, particular  
3 echocardiogram, to look at the possibility of occult  
4 valvular problem that might be seeded.

5           The other thing that occurred to me that  
6 I guess maybe may not be all that relevant, but given  
7 at least in the natural history of typhoid fever that  
8 a substantial proportion of patients with fever have  
9 intestinal perforation or hemorrhage is screening, at  
10 least guaiac screening of stools, early on, a  
11 reasonable precaution to take to actually detect that  
12 should it be, you know, beginning to occur.

13           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:        Thanks, Dr.  
14 Breiman. We'll bring up those points later depending  
15 on the outcome of the vote on this.

16           Dr. Vanderpool, did you have your hand up?

17           DR. VANDERPOOL:   Yes. I appreciate what  
18 Dr. Clements-Mann said about the advantages of having  
19 a challenge model. I would like for someone or ones  
20 to address the question, okay, if this were not  
21 approved, where would we be; if it is approved, where  
22 will we be going in terms of new experimentation, so  
23 that we'll have a better feel for the benefits versus  
24 the harms of approving or not approving.

25           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:        Thanks, Dr.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Vanderpool.

2 I'd like to call on Dr. Pratt first to  
3 have an opportunity to address that question. Please  
4 use the microphone.

5 DR. PRATT: As was mentioned, there is a  
6 Phase 3 trial of a candidate vaccine ongoing now in an  
7 endemic area.

8 DR. VANDERPOOL: But could you go beyond  
9 that? I mean with this model how quickly would that  
10 vaccine be tested and possibly moved to field? How  
11 many other vaccine teams are willing, are ready to  
12 move other typhoid vaccinations to the research  
13 agenda, and so on?

14 Are we really opening a significant door  
15 by approving this or are we opening the door just a  
16 little wider than it was?

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Is it a moot point  
18 or not, Dr. Pratt, is really the question, whether  
19 this proceeds or not? Is it relevant to what is  
20 ongoing? Will the absence of it inhibit?

21 DR. PRATT: Well, I can't comment about  
22 any vaccines that Dr. Levine's group may be hoping to  
23 use in the challenge model, but as I was saying, there  
24 is at least one other candidate vaccine in Phase 3  
25 efficacy trials in an endemic area at this time.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

2 Is there anyone else at FDA who wishes to  
3 comment on this point?

4 Dr. Mittoon.

5 DR. MITTOON: Dr. Mittoon, FDA.

6 I think it's somewhat difficult to comment  
7 further other than to reiterate what Dr. Pratt stated,  
8 namely, that there is a study currently ongoing in a  
9 Phase 3 efficacy study. I think we would have to look  
10 perhaps to Dr. Levine and Dr. Ivanoff because there  
11 were concerns stated that perhaps it would facilitate  
12 getting other vaccines into Phase 3 studies if one had  
13 this kind of model.

14 And so I would really ask for them perhaps  
15 to address this.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thanks, Karen.

17 Before we do, Dr. Clements-Mann, did you  
18 want to follow up or add to this point in the  
19 discussion now?

20 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: I think Dr. Levine  
21 should answer that, but it would seem to me that every  
22 case would be taken on its own merit; that, you know,  
23 if there was a proposal there would have to be  
24 justification for testing a vaccine against challenge;  
25 and that that would require another FDA review and

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 also extensive IRB review.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hoffman, and  
3 then we'll have Dr. Levine respond.

4 DR. HOFFMAN: To me the answer to your  
5 question is actually very simple. A field trial cost  
6 a million, two million, three million dollars. If I  
7 have a vaccine or if Dr. Levine has a vaccine which he  
8 shows has 80 percent efficacy in a challenge, then  
9 going to get the funding, whether it's from NIH, WHO,  
10 or involving an industrial partner for the development  
11 of this is quite a different story than going to  
12 somebody and saying, "Look. I've got something that  
13 looks pretty good. It's immunogenic. It makes" --  
14 Dr. Stein showed it makes CTL, "but we really don't  
15 know if it works, and we'd like you to invest a few  
16 million dollars in this and take it out to the field  
17 and develop."

18 There's plenty of typhoid fever out there,  
19 but putting together the team to develop a field site  
20 to actually study it when you don't have any efficacy  
21 data is very difficult.

22 So from my point of view it makes perfect  
23 sense. If you didn't have this, you could still do  
24 it, but you will never test as many things as  
25 efficiently as you would if you did have it.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

2 Dr. Levine, would you like to answer,  
3 please?

4 DR. LEVINE: There are a number of vaccine  
5 candidates that we hope will offer the same safety  
6 profile, but much greater immunogenicity and  
7 protective efficacy than the currently licensed  
8 vaccines.

9 It is true that there is one Vi conjugate  
10 vaccine that's in a Phase 3 trial. That's a somewhat  
11 unusual circumstance that led to that trial in that  
12 particular country. There was a quid pro quo that  
13 would not be available to other vaccines to gain  
14 access to that particular country's field area.  
15 That's one point.

16 The second point is that to the best of my  
17 knowledge, that conjugate vaccine is not associated  
18 with a manufacturer. There is a manufacturer that  
19 also makes a Vi conjugate vaccine. That manufacturer  
20 is, indeed, interested in having access to a volunteer  
21 model.

22 Then there are the live vaccine  
23 candidates. We have a candidate that is in Phase 2  
24 trials. It is appearing very well tolerated. The  
25 study is blind. We hope that if there are good immune

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 response and acceptable clinical profile, that that  
2 could be evaluated in a volunteer model which would  
3 then, indeed, in that circumstance expedite the  
4 possible field trial evaluation of that vaccine.

5 Then there are two other candidates that  
6 also come from academia. One of those candidates, or  
7 perhaps both, are associated with small biotech  
8 company associations, but not with large vaccine  
9 manufacturers.

10 Exactly as Steve Hoffman mentioned, if  
11 there were efficacy data, this would provide  
12 compelling acceleration to the possibility that those  
13 vaccine candidates would also be able to hook up with  
14 a vaccine manufacturer and to move expeditiously to  
15 field trial.

16 A week before last in Atlanta, there was  
17 an emerging infections meeting, an international  
18 meeting. One of the themes of that meeting was that  
19 we are a global village; that with emerging and  
20 reemerging infections, we have to work together. I  
21 think this is an example where there's much to be  
22 gained from working together.

23 Dr. Ivanoff would like to respond also.

24 DR. IVANOFF: Yes, I would like to come  
25 back to this very important point mentioned by Dr.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Snider. I would say that today it's impossible to get  
2 the WHO ethical clearance without a foreign antigen  
3 which has not been tested or evaluated in an  
4 industrialized country. I mean either in the U.S. or  
5 in Sweden or in England and U.K.

6 I can provide you with several examples.  
7 We are now trying to find a site for shigella vaccine.  
8 We are founding (phonetic) some sites, but the first  
9 question is that this vaccine is safe in human beings.  
10 Yes, okay. Is this vaccine protective? In other  
11 words, are you wasting your time or not?

12 If you have not this reply, you can stop  
13 your study. It's finished concerning the WHO ethical  
14 committee. Okay?

15 We have another example for the meninge  
16 (phonetic) conjugate vaccine for to put this vaccine  
17 in Niger, we have been obliged to show that it was  
18 safe and immunogenic, of course. We cannot say  
19 effective because we have not the possibility to prove  
20 that.

21 In industrialized country, it has been  
22 done in U.S., as you know, and in U.K. also. In other  
23 words, it's impossible to go through the WHO ethical  
24 committee without having this kind of data. That's an  
25 important point I would like to outline.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
2 Ivanoff.

3 Dr. Mittoon?

4 DR. MITTOON: I'd like to make a  
5 distinction between having a vaccine candidate  
6 initially be tested in an industrialized country  
7 versus actually asking that this vaccine be validated  
8 or somehow tested in a challenge model. I think there  
9 is a distinction.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you for  
11 reminding us.

12 Other points from the Committee prior to  
13 our taking a vote on this question? Does everyone  
14 feel they have enough information to vote on this?

15 It appears so. Dr. Danis.

16 DR. DANIS: I just want to raise the point  
17 that the question as stated involves balancing the  
18 benefits and the risks. It seems like there is really  
19 a pressing need for vaccine, and this challenge model  
20 may be very useful in assisting that.

21 In terms of the risks, I think the team  
22 proposing doing the research has been extremely  
23 responsible. They are somewhat limited in dealing  
24 with a piece of the risk that I think we need to  
25 address, and that is that as it's stated, any medical

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 problems that fall out from participating will not be  
2 reimbursed in the consent form unless these people  
3 bring a claim forward, and I think that we need to, if  
4 we're going to use this kind of model for developing  
5 useful models for general societal well-being, we need  
6 to find a way to acknowledge to these folks and  
7 provide back-up so that they will get care that is not  
8 simply the product of negligence.

9 They're going to get excellent  
10 observation, but we need to find mechanisms for  
11 dealing with that. I think this is a problem that  
12 needs to be weighed in the balance.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: This is very  
14 standard in consent forms, as you appreciate.

15 Dr. Vanderpool.

16 DR. VANDERPOOL: I think we all understand  
17 in keeping with this suggestion and one earlier that  
18 when we vote yes or no on this, if we vote yes, what  
19 we're saying is in light of the fixability of the  
20 points that were made earlier and the consent form.

21 So we're not just approving the entire  
22 thing with this vote. The question is upon being  
23 fixable, is this something we think should go forward.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you for  
25 restating the issue.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           We will deal with fine tuning the process  
2           and making suggestions as we proceed today.  If there  
3           is anything else salient, I'll hear it.  Otherwise  
4           we'll vote.

5           Dr. Snider and then Dr. Mintz.

6           DR. SNIDER:  That was one question I  
7           wanted to add.  I wanted to ask you about whether when  
8           we vote if it, you know, was contingent.

9           The other just in response to Dr. Ivanoff,  
10          which I think has helped a great deal.  The practical  
11          issue then is clear about what the committee at WHO  
12          would do.

13          I would just point out that at least in my  
14          own view that that's not social justice because  
15          distributing benefits across rich and poor, black and  
16          white, et cetera, is the issue.

17          But so what we're talking about is a  
18          political decision, which is a reality that we have to  
19          accept.

20          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:  Thank you.

21          Dr. Mintz, and then Dr. --

22          DR. VANDERPOOL:  I want to underscore what  
23          Dr. Snider just said.  The OPRR rules for the  
24          protection of research subjects require equivalent  
25          ethical protections in the field as in the U.S.  In

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 light of that, the U.S. population did not have to  
2 serve as subjects prior to any testing in the field.

3 Now, if that is a political reality at the  
4 WHO that's good to know, but the protections are still  
5 in place for people off American soil, and it seems to  
6 me that I'd be willing to quarrel with that decision  
7 with WHO, but if that's their standard, then so be it,  
8 but that need not be the standard that the U.S. would  
9 accept.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Mintz.

11 DR. MINTZ: To return perhaps to more  
12 mundane matters, I think there has been considerable  
13 evidence presented today as to the risks and the  
14 potential benefits of this type of a study.

15 I'd like to add one small extra piece.  
16 The serologic markers for typhoid fever are not ideal  
17 by a long range, and often we're presented with cases  
18 that are suspected of having typhoid fever and can we  
19 determine through a serologic test, an antibody test  
20 whether or not they did, and I think an additional  
21 benefit from this type of study that would be more  
22 difficult to derive from a study in the field would be  
23 better markers for evidence of typhoid infection,  
24 which could be of use in the United States.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           With the provisions we indicated earlier  
2           and with reassurance, Dr. Snider and others, we will  
3           vote, keeping in mind that the vote, if yes, will be  
4           contingent on the suggestions which will be made to  
5           FDA and transferred to the sponsor.

6           So there are several people at the table  
7           who have not been cleared for voting for reasons that  
8           I had nothing to do with.

9           (Laughter.)

10          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: And these include  
11          Dr. Sears, Breiman, Danis, Ms. Knowles, and Dr.  
12          Eickhoff. You'll have your chances later in the day.  
13          Some of you will.

14          So we'll start then with Dr. Hall. I can  
15          restate the question. Does the information likely to  
16          be gained from the challenge model justify the risks  
17          to subjects and the community? The vote is yes or no.

18          Dr. Hall?

19          DR. HALL: I would vote yes.

20          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Adimora.

21          DR. ADIMORA: I would also vote yes.

22          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Greenberg.

23          DR. GREENBERG: Yes.

24          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Mintz?

25          DR. MINTZ: Yes.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Vanderpool?

2 DR. VANDERPOOL: Yes.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hoffman?

4 DR. HOFFMAN: Yes.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Fierer?

6 DR. FIERER: Yes.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Edwards?

8 DR. EDWARDS: Yes.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Clements-Mann?

10 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider?

12 DR. SNIDER: Yes.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes?

14 DR. ESTES: Yes.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: And for the record,

16 I vote yes as well.

17 Thank you all.

18 And now we'll move on to helping FDA and  
19 the sponsors with the questions indicated, as well as  
20 any others that you all would like to suggest in  
21 refining the protocols and in strengthening all safety  
22 guidelines for subjects.

23 So it's medical and scientific input that  
24 is being sought from us. Question A then is: please  
25 comment on the criteria proposed for initiating

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 antibiotic treatment.

2 The criteria is, as you've heard,  
3 temperature greater than or equal to 38.3 degrees for  
4 12 hours or bacteremia on days seven-14.

5 Any spontaneous remarks? Yes, Dr. Hall.

6 DR. HALL: Well, as I alluded to before,  
7 I'm somewhat concerned that this is a little bit too  
8 general and may involve a number of the more common  
9 infections that are viral.

10 I'd comment, first of all, that 48 hours  
11 of isolation is not long enough for many of the  
12 virtual incubation periods, so that that would not  
13 guarantee what we might call a, quote, infection that  
14 would appear within those first few days and not be  
15 related to the typhoid.

16 The other question though that I have with  
17 this is that if you do treat -- say that somebody gets  
18 a fever by these criteria -- within the first day or  
19 two after inoculation, what happens if you treat with  
20 ciprofloxacin immediately? What does that do to the  
21 course?

22 Does that person then have to be  
23 eliminated from the data because that would be one-  
24 eighth of the data?

25 If it's given simultaneously or close to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 it, what would be the course that you would expect  
2 would be changed?

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Levine or Dr.  
4 Tackett?

5 DR. LEVINE: Carolyn, that's an  
6 interesting question. We don't have a definite answer  
7 for ciprofloxacin, but the answer with  
8 chloramphenicol, which had a very different pattern of  
9 treatment, would be if -- and Dick Hornick did this.  
10 He administered chloramphenicol beginning 24 hours  
11 after challenge and gave chloramphenicol for a week or  
12 even several weeks.

13 When chloramphenicol was stopped at the  
14 end of the week, that began a new countdown, if you  
15 will, for incubation. It's as if with chloramphenicol  
16 there simply had been a delay by one week.

17 I believe that your point about exogenous  
18 agents interfering with interpretation is a very  
19 important one, and it has bothered us very much. I  
20 would suggest the following proposal to resolve that.

21 The incubation period with salmonella  
22 typhi in the field or in the old volunteer studies was  
23 such that the larger the inoculum, the shorter the  
24 incubation, but even at nine logs, I believe that the  
25 absolute shortest was about three days.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           So if we said arbitrarily that it's not  
2 typhoid even if there is a febrile response within the  
3 first 72 hours, that's not considered towards  
4 definition of typhoid, if we add those 72 hours to the  
5 48 hours of observation, that's five days. That  
6 should rule out most acute respiratory agents that  
7 have been a problem over the years during wintertime  
8 with volunteer studies. I think that that would be  
9 very helpful.

10           DR. HALL: Would you include then the  
11 rapid test for many of those viral agents at that  
12 point?

13           DR. LEVINE: We certainly can. We do them  
14 at Maryland. I think that's another excellent  
15 suggestion.

16           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Is the Committee  
17 comfortable with this? I see lots of heads nodding  
18 yes, Dr. Levine.

19           Dr. Eickhoff.

20           DR. EICKHOFF: I've forgotten what blood  
21 culture technique is being used, but what is the  
22 duration of time from draw to first notification of  
23 positivity?

24           DR. LEVINE: Well, in the old days it was  
25 several days. In the old methodology, one actually

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 had to keep the cultures, the bottles for a minimum of  
2 seven days because salmonella typhi with old  
3 methodology could in a small proportion notoriously  
4 late come up in positivity.

5 The new BACTEC methods though give a  
6 rather rapid readout of positivity. So we really are  
7 in a new technology with respect to the bacteriology  
8 versus what was done in the early '70s.

9 PARTICIPANT: I thought you were using the  
10 lysis centrifugation.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, in the  
12 protocol you indicate the isolator tube. Are you  
13 planning to do both, the BACTEC models as well as the  
14 trademark isolator?

15 DR. LEVINE: No.

16 PARTICIPANT: --lysis.

17 DR. LEVINE: Okay. That was in response  
18 to an FDA request. Take that back. Sorry.

19 DR. EICKHOFF: Are we talking 12 hours or  
20 less?

21 DR. LEVINE: Jim?

22 DR. NATARO: No, we're still talking 48 or  
23 more hours.

24 DR. LEVINE: Yeah.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Since you bring up

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 the issue of the blood culture bottles versus the  
2 isolator, at an earlier meeting relating to salmonella  
3 vectors in dealing with the issue of quantitative  
4 blood cultures, I believe I may have made the  
5 suggestion to use the isolator product because that  
6 would be very efficient and permit quantitation.

7 But I'm concerned about the volumes you  
8 propose, and given the low level bacteremia that one  
9 ordinarily sees in noncompromised adults who have  
10 typhoid, as well as the leukopenia that so many  
11 patients may have, the lysis centrifugation is going  
12 to be based on lysis of facocytes, and you are going  
13 to have, say, one to ten colony forming units per mL.  
14 I'm concerned about putting suboptimum five mLs into  
15 each of three isolator tubes.

16 The product was licensed, the isolator  
17 tube, with the requirements that one put eight to ten  
18 mLs, I believe, in each tube. The maximum is about  
19 ten, and the minimum we would accept in our laboratory  
20 is about seven.

21 And I'm sensitive to your issue on the  
22 volume of blood for all of the other tests, but I'm  
23 not confident in your ability to pick up low level  
24 degrees of bacteremia, given the volumes in each of  
25 the isolator tubes, and wonder if that could be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 brought up to at least eight mLs.

2 But these sediments then, for those of you  
3 who don't know, the cells are lysed, and then the  
4 sediment is plated onto ordinary microbiologic media  
5 and then incubated and inspected every day, and so  
6 what we gain is the quantitation per mL blood. What  
7 we lose is the rapid detection that would be present  
8 in the current fully automated system, names of which  
9 cited by Dr. Levine, BACTEC system, BAC-T Alert, et  
10 cetera.

11 And so I think this issue has to be  
12 confronted.

13 DR. LEVINE: Okay. Your point is well  
14 taken. Nested within our last large scale trial in  
15 Santiago, Chile, near ten years ago, we did a  
16 comparison of multiple blood cultures versus one  
17 single, large blood culture to look at volume versus  
18 time of collection, and what was very clear is that  
19 with salmonella typhi volume of blood is the key. So  
20 your point is very well taken.

21 We could manipulate the volumes of other  
22 tests such that the volume could be increased. This  
23 clinical protocol has gone through multiple  
24 iterations, one of which was to switch from the rapid  
25 test to the quantitative.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 I think that with larger volumes and the  
2 use of the methodology that would allow quantitation,  
3 we would gain a maximum volume. So we would be very  
4 receptive to making that change.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Okay. We'll pursue  
6 other points here then. Everyone wants something.

7 We'll start with Dr. Sears and then Dr.  
8 Estes and Dr. Hoffman.

9 DR. SEARS: A question about the clinical  
10 evaluation, which is at the other end of Dr. Hall's  
11 question, and that is the way the wording of the  
12 protocol is currently, it suggests that a temp. of  
13 38.3 will be observed. Six hours later another  
14 temperature may be taken, and six hours later another  
15 temperature after that.

16 I think you're expecting mild clinical  
17 illnesses overall, but the reality may fall in  
18 between. For example, someone could get a temperature  
19 of 38.3, then have a rigor and spike to 39 in the next  
20 hour.

21 In the current word -- that's intuitive  
22 what needs to be done, but the current wording doesn't  
23 allow for the vagaries of clinical medicine and the  
24 sort of obvious implication that that person should be  
25 placed on antibiotics earlier than 12 hours.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 I think it's probably less important to  
2 the protocol. What is important is what the message  
3 is to the people on the ward in terms of responding.  
4 There is a call beeper, but none of the physicians  
5 listed for the call beeper are likely to be readily  
6 available at 2:00 a.m.

7 So what are the back-up plans? You know,  
8 what is the ready response team in case a crisis is  
9 observed?

10 Now, again, my understanding is in the  
11 earlier studies no one ever became hypotensive, so  
12 that their extreme definition of typhoid fever is very  
13 unlikely to be observed, but an in between level of  
14 clinical illness may be seen, and what are the  
15 instructions to the team on the ward to manage that?

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Very good point.

17 Carol, Dr. Tacket.

18 DR. TACKET: Yeah, it's an excellent point  
19 about if you take the temperature one hour, the next  
20 hour it could be much higher.

21 Certainly we could write a contingency  
22 for, say, if the temperature is at a certain point  
23 that additional temperatures would be made on a Q two-  
24 hours basis, which is what we have in other protocols.

25 My concern about arbitrarily measuring one

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 volunteer's temperature at the seventh hours, one hour  
2 after the sixth hour measurement, is that we really  
3 ought to measure everybody's temperature in order to  
4 be fair in terms of gathering that information. So we  
5 ought to perhaps add just a Q two-hour vital signs if  
6 the temperature is 38 degrees, for example, so that  
7 that would just be an automatic.

8 DR. SEARS: Yeah, I think that would be my  
9 suggestion, is that there be some mechanism that's  
10 very clear that that person doesn't go back to the  
11 room and then doesn't have a blood pressure or  
12 temperature taken until six hours later. I mean even  
13 in routine hospitals, those situations can occur and  
14 lead to real problems.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I think your point  
16 may be related to this. So I'll preempt Dr. Clements-  
17 Mann's.

18 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: That's all right.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hall.

20 DR. HALL: I was wondering if why not just  
21 take them Q-4 to begin with because if you're looking  
22 for a 12-hour duration of a mild fever, and since most  
23 of those fevers will not even occur until evening or  
24 late afternoon, you may entirely miss is one other  
25 aspect of it.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           So I wondered if you started at Q-4 if  
2           some of these other alternatives would be less likely.

3           CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:       That seems a  
4           reasonable suggestion.

5           Dr. Clements-Mann.

6           DR. CLEMENTS-MANN:   Well, I think having  
7           done that to volunteers, and you think about for 30  
8           days, that pretty -- sleep deprivation is going to  
9           become a problem.

10          I mean, usually you can signal that when  
11          a volunteer feels like they're having a fever, that  
12          they could ask to have their temperature taken  
13          earlier, and then once they develop a certain level,  
14          then you could do it with more frequency, but please  
15          don't write in in every four hours.

16          DR. HALL:   But aren't there certain times  
17          when it would be more likely that fever would develop  
18          and that you could then diminish that response  
19          thereafter?

20          DR.    CLEMENTS-MANN:       I think most  
21          volunteers know when they have a fever.  Most people  
22          know when they have a fever and that some clinical  
23          judgment would be used here.

24          CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:       Wasn't your  
25          thinking that it would be in the first so many days,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 not for the entire 30-day period?

2 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: They're going to walk  
3 off the unit.

4 (Laughter.)

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Sears?

6 DR. SEARS: But even since it's unclear  
7 what the onset will be, you're actually looking at two  
8 weeks of frequent vital signs, which is an awful lot.  
9 I would agree with Dr. Clements-Mann that if you  
10 educate the volunteers, alert the staff, and then you  
11 have a protocol for increasing clinical care, then  
12 you'll probably cover the possibilities.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Many grateful  
14 volunteers.

15 Dr. Clements-Mann, you had another point  
16 though that you wanted to bring up? Was your hand up  
17 earlier?

18 It was Dr. Hoffman perhaps -- Dr. Estes.  
19 Sorry. Please, Mary.

20 DR. ESTES: I think that getting slightly  
21 larger blood volumes is important even if you have to  
22 back off a little bit on the pathogenesis studies in  
23 the initial people. I think we're maybe going to  
24 talk a little later about how many people should be  
25 done with which strains, but I think initially to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 really establish the baselines of what these  
2 challenges do to a few people is very important, and  
3 knowing the bacterial loads is important.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

5 I feel very strongly about that point. I  
6 want FDA to appreciate the intensity of our belief in  
7 the importance here.

8 Dr. Hoffman.

9 DR. HOFFMAN: Yes. I just had one  
10 question, but let me just follow up on that point.  
11 One is I think that if you're going to initiate  
12 therapy without a positive culture, then you should  
13 take a huge volume of blood because you'd like to  
14 maximize the possibility that that individual was  
15 going to give positive. Then a tremendous amount  
16 would be learned from that.

17 So I would recommend quadrupling the size  
18 of the amount of blood.

19 The second is that --

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Excuse me. Prior  
21 to starting therapy when prompted to start is your  
22 point?

23 DR. HOFFMAN: By fever, by fever.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: By fever. Very  
25 good.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. HOFFMAN: The second point is that if  
2 there is an interest, and there probably ought to be,  
3 in rapidly identifying bacteremic patients, Fran Ruvin  
4 (phonetic) and I actually published a paper about ten  
5 years ago showing that if you culture the mononuclear  
6 cell layer in typhoid patients, most of them will be  
7 positive within 18 hours of blood draw and plating.

8 So you can more rapidly identify patients,  
9 the bacteremia, by a different technique, and I would  
10 suggest considering that anyway.

11 And my question is: where did you pick  
12 38.3 degrees Centigrade from, and what's the logic for  
13 that? Why not 37.5?

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Levine or Dr.  
15 Tacket.

16 DR. TACKET: It is, again, arbitrary. We  
17 actually did some informal studies among ourselves,  
18 measuring oral temperature after gum chewing, drinking  
19 office, taking a hot shower, a number of other  
20 activities, and found that these activities do raise  
21 the body temperature at least as measured under the  
22 time temporarily.

23 There are studies showing a range of  
24 normal temperatures in normal individuals that  
25 certainly don't cover 101 degrees, which is what 38.3

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 is, but we thought that that was a level that  
2 reflected pathology and not these other normal  
3 fluctuations or activities involving the mouth.

4 DR. HOFFMAN: But don't you know what the  
5 mean plus two or three standard deviations is in  
6 people?

7 DR. TACKET: I don't. That would be a  
8 good thing to use.

9 DR. HOFFMAN: You published a paper on  
10 that, Mike.

11 DR. TACKET: The Kobiaks paper, but I  
12 don't remember the mean and the standard deviations.  
13 Do you?

14 DR. LEVINE: Can I just add to that that  
15 I think we need to start with a model that's extremely  
16 conservative, Steve, and then as we gain information  
17 and gain comfort with the model, which I think will be  
18 instructive for all of us, then I think we can  
19 consider moving that level a bit to the right or  
20 extending by a few hours the period of time of febrile  
21 state prior to initiating therapy.

22 But we specifically wanted to begin with  
23 an extremely conservative point at which to initiate  
24 therapy. I think your suggestion of a large volume of  
25 blood, this is a typhoidologist suggestion. I think

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 it's great. We applaud it, and we'd love to do it.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

3 If there are no further points and, Dr.  
4 Pratt, unless you feel you would like us to respond to  
5 something else, I'll be looking to you from time to  
6 time as we proceed here. Please interject if you feel  
7 we're not being sufficiently helpful.

8 Question B is comment -- and this might  
9 take the least of our time -- on whether blood  
10 cultures should be obtained on days five and six. We  
11 heard sentiment this morning supporting the need to do  
12 blood cultures on days five and six.

13 Could I have a show of hands at the table?  
14 How many thing we should recommend drawing blood on  
15 days five and six for cultures?

16 (Show of hands.)

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Of those who are  
18 permitted to vote, it would appear it's pretty  
19 unanimous. If I'm overstating it and anyone dissents,  
20 please --

21 DR. FIERER: It's not unanimous.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Fine. You didn't  
23 think it was necessary?

24 DR. FIERER: No, I don't think.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Fine. Let's do

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 this again. How many people would like to draw blood  
2 on days five and six?

3 (Show of hands.)

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That's about five  
5 of us roughly.

6 And those against drawing blood on those  
7 days?

8 (Show of hands.)

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Three, four, five,  
10 six, of those who are permitted to vote.

11 MS. CHERRY: Do it again, please.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Again, no, the no  
13 vote.

14 (Show of hands.)

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: So no to yes by the  
16 difference of one vote here. Would the nay voters  
17 like to comment on their vote? At least one  
18 commenter, yes, please. Dr. Fierer.

19 DR. FIERER: I don't know what you'll do  
20 with the information. The problem is you don't know  
21 when the initial bacteremia ends and when the  
22 secondary bacteremia or, that is, true typhoid fever  
23 begins.

24 I think they probably didn't want to know  
25 in that interval because it's going to be extremely

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 difficult in an asymptomatic person with a positive  
2 blood culture on day five to know what to do at that  
3 point, and I think in a sense it's better not to know.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Clements-Mann.

5 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes. Really if there,  
6 as I imagine there is, going to be an absolute volume  
7 of blood that's required, I'd much rather get the  
8 large volume right before you start treatment, to get  
9 the amount that you stated in each blood culture, and  
10 optimize detection of true typhoid fever rather than  
11 just do a fishing expedition and actually have to  
12 bleed those volunteers unnecessarily.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hall?

14 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: And the risk to the  
15 volunteer. I mean, it's not --

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: No, your points are  
17 rather convincing.

18 Dr. Hall.

19 DR. HALL: I have essentially the same  
20 point. I think ideally if you had tons of blood,  
21 easy, and everything, you would draw blood all the  
22 time, but given the ratio of the benefit to  
23 feasibility here, I would choose the feasibility in  
24 this particular case of being able to put it where  
25 it's more important, more volume at other times.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Those of you who  
2 voted yes, anyone wish to speak? Yes, Dr. Edwards.  
3 Sorry.

4 DR. EDWARDS: I think this is a challenge  
5 model for us to understand all that we can understand  
6 about the model, and so I think for that reason it  
7 would be very nice to have an understanding of the  
8 dynamics and the magnitude of the bacteremia  
9 throughout the course of observation.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hoffman and  
11 then Dr. Adimora.

12 DR. HOFFMAN: I would agree with Dr.  
13 Edwards, but would modify my vote by saying that in  
14 the context of the total volume and feasibility that  
15 it's not required. It's certainly probably not going  
16 to change management. It would be ideal to do it, but  
17 I would change my vote to a no in the context of the  
18 volume issue.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

20 Dr. Adimora.

21 DR. ADIMORA: That's exactly what I was  
22 going to say.

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yeah, I was among  
24 the yes voters, and I think that arguments presented  
25 are more compelling not to do it. In a balanced world

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 it may not be feasible, given the requirements for  
2 everything else.

3 Well, let's move on to Question 6, the  
4 next three then, we'll tackle.

5 C is comment on the proposal for out-  
6 patient antibiotic treatment of subjects who continue  
7 to have positive stool cultures after an initial in-  
8 patient course.

9 Who would like to open the discussion on  
10 that? Dr. Clements-Mann.

11 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Well, I had two  
12 thoughts on this. One is, first of all, people would  
13 be treated on an out-patient basis who had normal  
14 typhoid fever. I mean we wouldn't hospitalize or  
15 isolate them necessarily in the real world.

16 But I would feel a little more comfortable  
17 -- I don't know if it's possible. I was looking at  
18 frequency of culturing stools, and I was wondering if  
19 one might come in a week after the in-patient, after  
20 the discharge and get at least, you know, one negative  
21 culture there, and that would get us past, well past,  
22 the antibiotic period.

23 So I was wondering if there might just be  
24 one out-patient visit for that, but I think with real  
25 targeted education of the volunteers about the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 importance of this, these by this time are going to be  
2 very compliant volunteers and will want to get rid of  
3 that.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Adimora, and  
5 then we'll come back to you, Dr. Sears.

6 DR. ADIMORA: I have very little faith in  
7 people's ability to be compliant with much of anything  
8 on an out-patient basis. However, I think that it  
9 sounds as if the volunteers will be carefully  
10 selected.

11 Moreover, the fact that they're going to  
12 have to come in and get IV ampicillin on an in-patient  
13 basis for two weeks if they don't clear their stools  
14 is probably going to be an incentive to be highly  
15 compliant, I think, with the out-patient therapy.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Eickhoff -- I'm  
17 sorry. Dr. Sears and then Dr. Eickhoff.

18 DR. SEARS: I believe Maryland state law  
19 for positive stool cultures is that you have to have  
20 three negatives on every other day over the course of  
21 a week if you have salmonella typhi to reenter the  
22 workplace, and I'm wondering if the criteria for  
23 negative in this study at some point has to match  
24 Maryland state law since these individuals may want to  
25 go back and be a food handler or day care provider or

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 health care worker.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, they were not  
3 permitted to be in the study if they were.

4 DR. SEARS: But subsequently they may  
5 enter one of those areas, and having been given  
6 salmonella typhi, and we all know that individual  
7 stool cultures are unreliable in detecting S. typhi.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Tacket or Dr.  
9 Levine?

10 DR. TACKET: That's an excellent point.  
11 I think the law is for food handlers to go back to  
12 work.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: It is.

14 DR. TACKET: But you're right. They might  
15 take a job with commercial food handling. They might  
16 get that McDonald's job after all. That's an  
17 excellent point. We could easily -- actually maybe we  
18 could do that second week after discharge and get the  
19 one that Mary Lou mentioned, and then additional ones  
20 that same week would be a good plan.

21 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Eickhoff and  
22 then Dr. Hall.

23 DR. EICKHOFF: I think I'm not  
24 particularly concerned about a positive stool culture,  
25 positive volunteer going back into a family setting

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 and using good personal hygiene.

2 I am a little concerned if such an  
3 individual, stool positive at discharge, is in a gay  
4 male relationship and is the receptive partner in such  
5 a relationship. I don't know. Certainly  
6 salmonellosis has been described in the context of the  
7 so-called gay bowel syndrome. Whether *S. typhi*  
8 specifically was ever included I don't know, but this  
9 would be a setting where something like that could  
10 happen.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any response from  
12 the sponsors on that?

13 DR. LEVINE: There was one Lancet letter,  
14 I believe it was, suggesting that salmonella typhi  
15 could be transmitted by sexual practices within the  
16 male homosexual community. I think that that's a fair  
17 point.

18 I will defer to Carol Tacket in terms of  
19 how we would deal with that in terms of the social  
20 aspects and avoiding any exclusion. I'll let you deal  
21 with it.

22 DR. TACKET: Thanks.

23 (Laughter.)

24 DR. TACKET: I think the way we would  
25 handle that would be in educating the volunteer rather

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 than excluding volunteers up front. It would be very  
2 difficult to exclude gay men who are engaging in low  
3 risk sexually transmitted disease type behavior. I  
4 think we would be likely to get dishonest answers if  
5 we excluded people on that basis, among other things.

6 But I think what we would probably do,  
7 having thought about it for the last 15 seconds, would  
8 be to --

9 (Laughter.)

10 DR. TACKET: -- perhaps add that to the  
11 consent form and explain that not only can typhi be  
12 spread person to person by food and water, but add  
13 that also by homosexual sexual practices.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Vanderpool and  
15 then Dr. Snider.

16 DR. SNIDER: Can I just point out --

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Sure, go right  
18 ahead.

19 DR. SNIDER: -- that men are not the only  
20 ones that might have receptive male intercourse. So  
21 you might want to modify.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

23 DR. VANDERPOOL: Right. I wanted to add  
24 that 30 days of abstinence is going to affect  
25 heterosexuals as well as gays.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 (Laughter.)

2 DR. VANDERPOOL: And I think the consent  
3 form needs to address the issue that if infectivity  
4 continues, the following precautions will need to be  
5 taken by those who are in sexual relationships, and I  
6 don't know what all that would be, but I think we  
7 definitely need to address that question in the  
8 consent form.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Fine. I think we  
10 can trust them to devise the correct wording.

11 Dr. Hall and then, yes, Dr. Fierer.

12 DR. HALL: I think, just to put it in  
13 perspective, I think the risk of this occurring, first  
14 of all, is very low among the 24, and secondly, being  
15 on ciprofloxacin is going to reduce that from what we  
16 know to even further the possibility of spread, but  
17 should that occur, which I think is unlikely, the one  
18 other caution that you might add is that that  
19 volunteer not go into a situation in which is at very  
20 close contact with an at risk person, which would  
21 involve an infant, an immunosuppressed, or something  
22 of that sort.

23 And I don't know at what point you have to  
24 say that, but nobody who has any contact with it --  
25 but most of these will not be coming from families in

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 which such a person exists. So that the compliance  
2 with at least telling them that they may not have  
3 close contact with those particular ones outside of  
4 their family probably would be an added precaution  
5 that would be of aid.

6 Dr. Fierer.

7 DR. FIERER: Yes. I think we all know how  
8 difficult it is to get patients to take medication  
9 when they're asymptomatic on a regular basis, and even  
10 though these are a highly motivated group of people  
11 obviously who have been through this, I would suggest  
12 that if you're going to have to retreat that you do it  
13 as a form of directly observed therapy. Probably once  
14 a day cipro would be done that way, could be done that  
15 way.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Other points? Yes,  
17 Dr. Edwards and then Dr. Hoffman.

18 DR. EDWARDS: To sort of underline the  
19 points that Caroline was making, I think that if,  
20 indeed, there is contact with individuals who then  
21 become febrile or have symptoms that are compatible,  
22 I think at this point you are asking them to report  
23 that when they come back at 90 days, but I think  
24 perhaps a little bit more encouragement, that if  
25 people that they are in contact with do have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 illnesses, that they are seen and cultured. So I  
2 think that would be helpful in terms of making sure  
3 that if transmission occurs that you really have your  
4 hand or your finger on that situation.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We're steering into  
6 Question 4, which is fine, but before we leave  
7 Question 3, we have Dr. Hoffman. Dr. Estes, did you  
8 have your hand up as well? Hoffman, Estes, and then  
9 Clements-Mann. Then we'll move on to Question 4.

10 DR. HOFFMAN: To reiterate what Dr. Fierer  
11 said, it's unlikely that more than three, four, five  
12 individuals are going to be positive in this study  
13 when they leave the hospital, and having home visits  
14 to administer the cipro would seem to be warranted  
15 from the point of view of protecting the study, I  
16 mean, protecting the University of Maryland and really  
17 minimizing the risk because it is unlikely that an  
18 individual will take this for two weeks twice a day,  
19 I would think.

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

21 Dr. Estes.

22 DR. ESTES: My point is really for four.

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Fine. We'll defer  
24 it for a second.

25 Dr. Clements-Mann.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Well, it sounds to me  
2 that one could develop a standard operating procedure  
3 for people that are probably not going to be positive,  
4 but if they are positive, then that would go into  
5 almost a surveillance study to make sure that they're  
6 not positive, their family is not positive, and that  
7 they have taken their medications, and that may have  
8 to be in some way tailored for the individual and  
9 where they live and that sort of thing.

10 But it is probably unlikely that it's  
11 going to occur at all, but you could have that  
12 algorithm. If it does occur, this is what you would  
13 have to do.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

15 Brief comment, Dr. Levine?

16 DR. LEVINE: Yes. Infants were mentioned  
17 on several occasions in terms of possible increased  
18 risk or increased severity. I would just like to say  
19 that the epidemiologic data shows that, in fact,  
20 infants are relatively spared, with the possible  
21 exception of the neonatal period. Infants, even when  
22 they acquire salmonella typhi infection, often  
23 manifest a very, very mild illness.

24 Epidemiologic studies done in water borne  
25 outbreaks where children less than 24 months of age

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 would be expected to consume their vehicle of  
2 transmission just like older individuals shows the  
3 same age specific incidence as one sees in endemic  
4 areas and in food borne outbreaks.

5 So I think that a special worry for  
6 infants may not necessarily be appropriate. It may  
7 actually be the opposite. They're relatively at lower  
8 risk.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: For my own  
10 education, Dr. Levine, this is not the case, is it, in  
11 protein calorie malnutrition in young infants? They  
12 would not be in that category of lower risk.

13 DR. LEVINE: Well, most endemic typhoid  
14 occurs in areas where protein calorie malnutrition is  
15 widespread, and if you look at the age specific  
16 incidence, what you see is that there's relative  
17 sparing in the first three years of life, that the  
18 clinical syndrome of typhoid fever, what we recognize  
19 as a clinical syndrome is a school age disease, five  
20 to 19 years of age.

21 If you take the time to do systematic  
22 blood culturing of children less than two who come to  
23 a health care facility with fever, using that as the  
24 indication for taking a blood culture, then you find,  
25 indeed, some of these children, in fact, a few

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 percent, have bacteremic salmonella typhi infection,  
2 but what's surprising about this is how mild it is,  
3 and had there not been a systematic blood culture  
4 survey, these children would never have been  
5 recognized.

6 This is in areas where there is high  
7 prevalence of malnutrition.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thanks.

9 Dr. Hall.

10 DR. HALL: My point is I understand that,  
11 but in terms of a young infant, what I really was  
12 thinking of is the first couple of months, one month  
13 or two months, and it's just for those reasons. It is  
14 often most difficult to tell, and this is not an  
15 epidemiologic situation. This would be a person going  
16 in with a known shedding, would have to be very close  
17 contact with a child who is under eight weeks of age.

18 So it should be in that case modified to  
19 the very young because those are the ones who may have  
20 asymptomatic overall, but still have the seeding.

21 DR. LEVINE: Sure.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I'll take the  
23 prerogative of the chair of moving on because the next  
24 two questions are very vital and require considerable  
25 input in my opinion.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           Question D, are there other changes to the  
2 protocol entry criteria or monitoring procedures or  
3 study design which we would suggest, that is, staging  
4 of enrolling, stopping rules, monitoring of in-patient  
5 and out-patient contacts?

6           We've already strayed into the monitoring  
7 of in-patient and out-patient contacts, but we do need  
8 to give feedback on these other points, and we'll  
9 start with Dr. Adimora and then we'll go right down  
10 the line, Dr. Greenberg, Dr. Vanderpool, and back to  
11 Dr. Hall.

12           DR. ADIMORA: Well, as I said earlier, and  
13 I certainly agree that the information that's likely  
14 to be gained is highly useful, but I continue to have  
15 some discomfort with the idea of challenging people  
16 with live bacteria when there's any risk at all, and  
17 I would like -- I also understand that salmonella  
18 typhi is an infrequent endocarditis pathogen. I also  
19 understand that the level of bacteremia and perhaps  
20 even the frequency of bacteremia is likely to be  
21 relatively low, particularly the concentration of  
22 bacteria in the blood.

23           But I would still like to see some  
24 consideration for a performance of screening cardiac  
25 echoes because, you know, having treated people who

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 have no behavioral risk factors for endocarditis, who  
2 did not know that they had mild valvular preexisting  
3 abnormalities, I think that the benefits of doing a  
4 screening, transthoracic echocardiography, would  
5 probably outweigh the inconvenience and, yes, the  
6 expense of doing it.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Response from the  
8 sponsors?

9 DR. ADIMORA: I'm wondering about what  
10 other people --

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I think this is a  
12 very valuable suggestion. I'd like to get input from  
13 the sponsors on this.

14 DR. LEVINE: Well, anything can be done,  
15 and we would want to do anything that increases the  
16 safety of the procedure and the model.

17 My only comment would be that let's  
18 consider risk. Let's ask the question: how common,  
19 how frequent is salmonella typhi endocarditis in  
20 endemic areas? How frequent was it in the pre-  
21 antibiotic era when there was persistent, continuing  
22 bacteremia going on for many weeks?

23 And the answer is that it was shockingly  
24 rare, extremely rare. If that's true, do we want to  
25 go to such -- do we want to add this when the risk

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 from that very specific complication is so rare? That  
2 would be my only question.

3 And perhaps I would ask the Committee to  
4 consider the literature. I left a chapter, Osler's  
5 chapter. Take a look at that. See the frequency of  
6 endocarditis in the pre-antibiotic era.

7 Steve Hoffman dealt with a lot of typhoid  
8 in adults in Indonesia. I can tell you what it was  
9 like in Chile: exceedingly, exceedingly rare.

10 That would be my only proviso in terms of  
11 a response.

12 DR. ADIMORA: Well, I understand that.  
13 That's why I prefaced my comment with I understand  
14 it's a rare event, and I understand that the level of  
15 bacteremia, from what I thought I heard you say, is  
16 likely to be quite low.

17 But nonetheless, I have some discomfort  
18 with giving people the organism in an experimental  
19 setting without that information, but I do certainly  
20 understand what you're saying, that it is a very rare  
21 event.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Would you consider  
23 as a substitute auscultation by a cardiologist?

24 DR. ADIMORA: Possibly, or perhaps -- I  
25 notice some people with murmurs could be included.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Perhaps doing echoes on those people who are going to  
2 participate who have murmurs.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, if someone  
4 had a murmur, you would follow that up, and they would  
5 have an echocardiogram, no?

6 DR. LEVINE: I would also suggest as  
7 information that there were almost 1,900 individuals  
8 previously exposed to salmonella typhi with more  
9 rigorous or less conservative criterion for the enter  
10 point of antibiotic intervention, and endocarditis was  
11 not seen.

12 Truly, it's an exceedingly, exceedingly  
13 rare event. It's just not considered a -- it's  
14 exceedingly rare, and therefore, without being pushed  
15 I think our response would be that would not be  
16 something that we'd consider worth the effort, time,  
17 money, et cetera.

18 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Greenberg.

19 DR. GREENBERG: I would just add that  
20 identification of something that was never identified  
21 and has no potential clinical significance or might  
22 not have any also has risk, and so as you think about  
23 this, you have to think about what is the risk of  
24 taking this volunteer and for the rest of their life  
25 putting in their mind that they had something wrong

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 with their heart.

2 So I feel personally, given the amazingly  
3 low risk of endocarditis, I think if somebody has a  
4 murmur, you would investigate it just as you would do  
5 as a normal clinician, but to start looking all over  
6 in your patient for potential weaknesses opens up a  
7 box that I'd be worried about.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Vanderpool.

9 DR. VANDERPOOL: This is on a somewhat  
10 different subject, but --

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Still pertaining to  
12 Question 4?

13 DR. VANDERPOOL: The same subject, but  
14 different than just this.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Right.

16 DR. VANDERPOOL: Are there other changes  
17 to the protocol entry criteria? Yes, I think there  
18 should be. I think this is the point at which the  
19 recruitment process needs to be -- it doesn't have to  
20 be elaborated, but certainly spelled out because there  
21 are social and ethical entry criteria that you're  
22 using, and I think that those need to be up front, and  
23 the more up front they are, the better it will be for  
24 this protocol, which I assume will be somewhat of a  
25 benchmark protocol for possibly others in the future

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that deal with experimental vaccines.

2 So I really think that the entry criteria  
3 need to be set forth. The social and ethical criteria  
4 you'll be using. You don't have to nail everything  
5 down because those are judgment calls, but I think you  
6 need to accent that we will be making judgment calls  
7 about the social and ethical criteria that would  
8 enable those who are approached as recruiters to be  
9 recruited, for the payment not to be viewed as  
10 coercive, and so on.

11 I think you're going to have some  
12 criteria. We need to think about it and have them put  
13 down specifically.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Is there anything  
15 specific that you want to suggest though, Dr.  
16 Vanderpool, or do you just want to be sure that the  
17 general category is addressed of social, ethical  
18 issues?

19 DR. VANDERPOOL: I think something like  
20 social and ethical criteria will be followed -- entry  
21 criteria -- will be followed that will enable the  
22 respect for the subject's autonomy to be secured or to  
23 assure respect for the subject's autonomy.

24 I think we know -- you've already said  
25 that there are people for whom \$2,500 even in an

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 isolation unit would be a hard thing to turn down, and  
2 you said, well, no, we're going to have people who are  
3 employable even if they've lost their job for a while.

4 So it may be left somewhat open, but I  
5 think if you outline briefly the recruitment steps  
6 about how they're contacted and how there'll be group  
7 meetings and discussion, that that will take care of  
8 part of it, but then I think the judgment call about  
9 who to exclude on the basis of social and ethical  
10 criteria are going to be things that are done.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

12 Dr. Mintz, any other points or study  
13 design?

14 I would like us to address study design  
15 for sure. Dr. Greenberg and then Dr. Hall.

16 DR. GREENBERG: Yes. I remain --

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: The microphone,  
18 please.

19 DR. GREENBERG: I remain unconvinced that  
20 two separate inocula are used here, and it seems to me  
21 that in this initial study perhaps gaining more data  
22 with one, given the fact that I haven't heard a  
23 convincing reason that the two are very different, and  
24 also from a safety standpoint, I have a much higher  
25 level of safety with something that's been given to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 1,600 people versus another agent that has never been  
2 given to people.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Are you talking  
4 about the Quailes strain with the two doses?

5 DR. GREENBERG: Yeah.

6 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I would look at it  
7 differently. I would propose looking at two doses of  
8 the ISP, of the newer strain perhaps, but --

9 DR. GREENBERG: Well, actually, one, I  
10 don't like using two different strains, and I don't  
11 know why use a new strain if you have a lot of  
12 experience with an older strain unless somebody can  
13 say that the immune response may be different or  
14 you're going to learn something, but I haven't heard  
15 what we're going to learn.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, let's hear  
17 more on this because I think several of us probably  
18 have thoughts on it.

19 Dr. Hall first and then Dr. Fierer.

20 DR. HALL: The original point was not that  
21 I was going to make, but I agree with you that I would  
22 like to see all things equal, but more volunteers be  
23 in each group if possible, but at least a second group  
24 potentially with the Quailes if this is really  
25 important, and I don't know enough about the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 background of this particular organism to know if it  
2 potentially has advantages.

3 But I think if it does, then I think it's  
4 really worth going at at this particular time.

5 The question though that I had was I  
6 wondered whether we could have clarification on the  
7 contact that the volunteers will have with each other,  
8 particularly if there are two strains. I have a  
9 number of question.

10 The, quote, potential for nosocomial  
11 spread in confined areas, and I have one anecdotal.  
12 We had a study which will remain unnamed a few years  
13 ago of a GI viral package in which the volunteers were  
14 isolated from each other, but a secondary case  
15 occurred, and actually we then traced that to find it  
16 occurred through the ice, common ice bin where they  
17 would go and help themselves, which was a great  
18 preservative.

19 So I was curious as to what kind of  
20 precautions against these contacts or spread from one  
21 to another would be, and can you be reinfected if you  
22 had one strain versus another or a mild infection?

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

24 Dr. Tacket, do you want to respond to  
25 that?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. TACKET: Yes, just very briefly. The  
2 volunteers are instructed very carefully in hygiene,  
3 hand washing primarily.

4 There is certainly an ice machine on the  
5 ward, but it's the type where you put a cup under a  
6 lever and the ice drips down, which actually I'm not  
7 sure we thought that true, but it's a good design.

8 (Laughter.)

9 DR. TACKET: We have some formal data  
10 about transmission of salmonella typhi on our research  
11 isolation ward to individuals who had not been  
12 inoculated with an attenuated strain and in every  
13 small numbers, like six volunteers who were not  
14 inoculated, living on a ward in a dormitory style with  
15 12 or 18 volunteers who had been inoculated with an  
16 attenuated strain. There was no transmission among  
17 these adults using our good hygiene.

18 There's also similar data for toxigenic E.  
19 coli in the conditions of our ward. Very small  
20 numbers and certainly doesn't rule out the  
21 possibility.

22 DR. HALL: These then, they're on a ward  
23 situation. So they intermingle among each other; is  
24 that correct?

25 DR. TACKET: Oh, very much so. It's more

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 like a dormitory.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Separate bathrooms  
3 for each person?

4 DR. TACKET: Separate stalls, but not a  
5 separate bathroom, but yeah, and there are bunk beds,  
6 four volunteers to a room. So they're very closely in  
7 contact.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Fierer next,  
9 please.

10 DR. FIERER: I would just point out that  
11 we really don't know what the important antigens are  
12 for protection in typhoid. We do know that Vi  
13 protects, but the strains really don't give an  
14 antibody response to Vi and they still protect, and we  
15 have no idea how they protect, and I think the most  
16 important thing is that you have a challenge strain  
17 that's heterologous from your vaccine, that whatever  
18 you end up with, I think that's the most important  
19 criterion.

20 And, you know, whether the Quailes strain  
21 would be okay since none of the vaccines seem to be  
22 based on that or you need another one I don't know,  
23 but I think that's what you should be aiming for.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes. That's an  
25 important point. I want the group to respond to this

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 issue. This may be beyond what FDA wanted us to  
2 respond to, but we've talked about monitoring. We've  
3 talked about the monitoring procedures, that is, blood  
4 cultures, et cetera, the contacts, but the issue of  
5 the strains and the number of groups.

6 I'd like FDA to mention something on this  
7 point. Dr. Mittoon?

8 DR. MITTOON: Before we leave the  
9 monitoring, I wanted to ask whether there might be any  
10 consideration given to actually monitoring the study  
11 personnel who were on the ward at the time that the  
12 study was being conducted.

13 And the other question I wanted to raise  
14 would be how would one handle it in the event that a  
15 subject decided that they wanted to leave the ward,  
16 but was, indeed, positive?

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I think there would  
18 be support here for monitoring the personnel that you  
19 indicate. There are lots of heads nodding, but what  
20 about the issue of someone who's positive who wants to  
21 leave the ward? Any thoughts on that?

22 DR. TACKET: Yeah, I mean, it's happened  
23 in other studies --

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Right.

25 DR. TACKET: -- that we've done, frankly,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 and it's a very difficult question. I think given the  
2 spirit of the discussions that we've had today and  
3 previous discussions, we would like very much to --  
4 even though a volunteer leaves the study, in other  
5 words was no longer having ASEs drawn, for example,  
6 that they would remain on the ward and receive  
7 ciprofloxacin for 14 days. So that would be the goal  
8 if that happened.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Is that your  
10 question though, Dr. Mittoon?

11 DR. MITTOON: But that presupposes that  
12 they be willing to stay there. I guess that really  
13 was my question. What happens if someone says, "I  
14 don't want to stay"?

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: And how is this  
16 consonant with Dr. Vanderpool's issue of autonomy?

17 DR. TACKET: This happens very rarely.  
18 What they are told up front, that if they decide to  
19 leave the study, they can certainly leave the study at  
20 any time, but they would be required to remain to  
21 receive ciprofloxacin for 14 days. If they are  
22 required to remain on the ward for 14 days, they might  
23 as well remain in the study.

24 However, if a volunteer -- for example,  
25 what happens more often than just wanting to leave is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 there's a family emergency, and in the course of 30  
2 days that might well happen, in which case I think we  
3 would make the decision on a case-by-case basis, but  
4 I could imagine that we might discharge a volunteer on  
5 ciprofloxacin with the understanding that they would  
6 return to our out-patient area for directly observed  
7 therapy.

8 I'm not sure we would have a policy up  
9 front saying across the board, "Here's exactly what we  
10 would do," but that would be the goal, would be to  
11 have them come back for directly observed therapy as  
12 out-patients if we were not able to convince them to  
13 stay on the ward.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Could you  
15 incorporate at least a sketch of this so it's apparent  
16 that thought has been given to it, and that there is  
17 a direction?

18 DR. TACKET: Sure. Good idea.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I think that this  
20 would be important for the agency.

21 Other points from the table? Yes, Dr.  
22 Hoffman.

23 DR. HOFFMAN: Two questions. First has to  
24 do with the strains again. CVD 109 is derived from  
25 ISP 1820.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. LEVINE: Nine, oh, six; 906 is  
2 derived from 1820.

3 DR. HOFFMAN: So that do you believe that  
4 there would be some advantage -- you mentioned in your  
5 presentation there might be some advantage gained from  
6 further studies with this carrier strain by doing  
7 challenge studies with the parent; is that right?

8 DR. LEVINE: No, 906 has been abandoned as  
9 a vaccine strain.

10 DR. HOFFMAN: So there is no vaccine  
11 strain that's derived from the --

12 DR. LEVINE: At this point.

13 DR. HOFFMAN: -- this Chilean isolate?

14 DR. LEVINE: All of the --

15 DR. HOFFMAN: Just following up on Dr.  
16 Greenberg's point, what is the advantage of having  
17 this second strain as opposed to the Quailes strain,  
18 which seems perfectly adequate?

19 DR. LEVINE: There may be no advantage.  
20 We just don't know because we have not worked with it.  
21 There are several reasons for suggesting looking at  
22 it.

23 One is that when the vaccine challenge  
24 model was discussed at the Diarrheal Vaccine Steering  
25 Committee some years ago in Geneva, this question came

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 up. What is the validity of the Quailes strain, which  
2 is now quite an old strain? As far as we know it is  
3 still valid.

4 Be that as it may, the question was raised  
5 if one sets up a model, why not look at a more modern  
6 strain, and in setting up a modern strain, we need one  
7 with an appropriate history. We need one with  
8 complete sensitivity to antibiotics, and in that sense  
9 ISP 1820 fits the characteristics of a possible  
10 alternative strain.

11 We don't know how the two strains would  
12 behave. It is conceivable that ISP 1820 might have a  
13 high attack rate and be a bit less hot, if you will,  
14 than Quailes or vice versa. We just don't know  
15 without doing the comparison.

16 It's because this was a bit of a quandary  
17 for us that we put it on the table to the Committee.  
18 We don't feel strongly, but we thought we would share  
19 the situation: that the question had been raised  
20 about adding to the model a more modern strain, and so  
21 we put that on the table and put that in the protocol.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Would you be doing  
23 one group at a time? How do you envision the numbers  
24 on the ward at one time? So you would do Quaile low  
25 dose, high dose, and separately, and then you would

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 have the others?

2 This may seem very simplistic, but I  
3 wondered what your plans were so that in addition  
4 there's no chance of cross-transmission of the two  
5 strains.

6 And if you did low dose earlier, including  
7 for ISP 1820, then you'd know that you had to stop and  
8 couldn't go on to high dose; same for Quailes.

9 Could you address these two issues, both?

10 DR. TACKET: The intention at the moment  
11 was to do all 24 volunteers as a cohort, and they'd be  
12 randomized to one of the three groups, but I think  
13 your suggestion is perfectly valid in terms of the  
14 study design. It would add an element of safety that  
15 somebody else has also mentioned this morning.

16 It does add a doubling of the expense.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Does it? Yes,  
18 personnel and so on, trying to staff the ward, et  
19 cetera.

20 DR. TACKET: Yes.

21 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, of course.

22 Dr. Snider. Did I miss anyone? Dr.  
23 Snider, please.

24 DR. SNIDER: Well, I guess I have a  
25 different take on this, and that is with the numbers,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 the sample size you're talking about, I don't think  
2 that it's very likely, although I may be wrong, but I  
3 don't think it's very likely that you're going to be  
4 able to tell much difference between the two, and so  
5 a larger sample size would be necessary if you wanted  
6 to really try to find -- because the confidence  
7 limits, I think, are just going to be so wide.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Agreed.

9 DR. SNIDER: But, on the other hand, it  
10 occurred to me when we were talking about monitoring  
11 the staff on the ward that if there is transmission on  
12 the ward, that it would be difficult to pick it up,  
13 you know, if people were getting more than the  
14 original dose you gave them, and one way to detect for  
15 that would be to have two different strains, and  
16 obviously you would have to characterize your isolates  
17 to determine that.

18 So I could see the -- the only real  
19 justification I could see for having more than one  
20 strain would be to detect transmission on the ward.  
21 Otherwise, I don't see a huge benefit in having just  
22 eight people with one of the strains. I don't think  
23 you're going to be able to do a meaningful comparison.

24 DR. LEVINE: One purely theoretical  
25 possible advantage of one strain over the other, if

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 attack rates were similar, were if there was a  
2 difference in incubation period such that with one of  
3 the strains one could achieve a high attack rate with  
4 an incubation that was shifted to the left by two days  
5 with a model. That's 30-some odd days. That actually  
6 would be quite attractive.

7 DR. SNIDER: But my question, Mike, is  
8 statistically how are you going to know that with your  
9 sample size.

10 DR. LEVINE: We won't be able to know that  
11 in the beginning, but --

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Not at a  
13 statistically relevant level.

14 Dr. Clements-Mann and then Dr. Estes.

15 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: I was just wondering  
16 with the other strain since there's just one dose,  
17 what would be your plan if the attack rate was maybe  
18 almost there, but not quite there. Would you also  
19 propose to go up a dose, to give a tenfold higher dose  
20 at some point?

21 I was just curious why just ten to the  
22 three.

23 DR. LEVINE: We're making the assumption  
24 that this is a guess based on our best guess, that ten  
25 to the three may very likely with buffer be the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 inoculum that would serve for the model.

2 I think that if ISP 1820 did not give a  
3 comparable attack rate, I think we would probably  
4 abandon ISP 1820.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes and then  
6 Dr. Adimora.

7 DR. ESTES: Well, one of the questions  
8 that I had had early when I read the protocol was that  
9 one of the new things you're testing is giving this in  
10 buffer, and the only prior experience you have is with  
11 the Quailes strain, and you're not doing a direct test  
12 of that. I mean, you're going on your shigella data  
13 that says if I take a shigella and put it in milk or  
14 bicarb., it makes a difference to me.

15 To me that's another argument of why you  
16 should stay with the Quailes strain where you have a  
17 lot of data. Again, you're establishing a new model  
18 with current new technologies where you can get a  
19 tremendous amount of quantitative data from it. I  
20 just think you're -- I think you can get a lot of  
21 wonderful data if you stay with an organism you know  
22 a lot about. I think you may be confusing the issue  
23 if you put in a new strain.

24 And it's not clear. You said that the  
25 pulse gel electrophoresis patterns at this point are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 similar. Unless there's some other reason why the new  
2 strain seems to be necessary to test.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Do you have any  
4 animal in vivo data? There's no animal in vivo data  
5 that you would have on these two strains?

6 DR. LEVINE: The only animal model that's  
7 used is the hog gastric MUS and IP challenge, which is  
8 absolutely irrelevant. There is no model other than  
9 the old chimpanzee model.

10 There is not a pressing special aspect of  
11 this newer strain. It had simply been raised amongst  
12 a group that was international, and they simply  
13 questioned Quailles, but I don't think there is any  
14 molecular genetic basis to question it. There's no  
15 immunologic basis to question it. There's really not  
16 a clinical bacteriologic reason or clinical reason to  
17 question it, and that's in great part why we're asking  
18 the Committee for guidance on this.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, let me get --

20 DR. LEVINE: But we're trying to please  
21 everyone in terms of recommendations.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, maybe you  
23 don't have to please us terribly. Let's get a sense  
24 of the Committee.

25 How many would be content with looking at

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Quailles rather than both strains? Could I get a --  
2 this is not a formal vote, and those of you who don't  
3 have an official vote can let me see a show of hands  
4 as well. How many would be content here? Put your  
5 hands up a little more.

6 (Show of hands.)

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That's at least  
8 three quarters of the table would be content with  
9 going with Quailles, and so that might help you very  
10 much and help FDA as well.

11 How many people would be content with  
12 going -- continuing their looking at the two doses  
13 with Quailles strain?

14 DR. BREIMAN: Can I ask a point of  
15 information on that?

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yeah.

17 DR. BREIMAN: I mean is there not a  
18 question of whether or not a vaccine might not prevent  
19 disease due to one strain versus another? Is that one  
20 issue that you would end up wanting to study in a  
21 model?

22 DR. LEVINE: The only place that that  
23 issue has been raised was in a field trial in  
24 Indonesia where there's a major antigenic difference  
25 of the flagellar antigen. That's the only time that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that question had been raised, but differences amongst  
2 phage types from the field trials done, there is  
3 protection against a broad array of phage types.

4 The question about the zed 66 unusual  
5 flagellar type was never answered. That essentially  
6 exists only in Indonesia in a very small proportion.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

8 I want to reask my question to test the  
9 objectivity again. How many would object to using  
10 both strains as this protocol moves forward?

11 So it's a different way of asking. How  
12 many would object? Hands up for objecting to using  
13 the --

14 DR. FIERER: I'd like to know whether you  
15 also include maintaining the same number of subjects.  
16 I mean if we lower the number of strains, would you  
17 increase the group size?

18 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, we can make  
19 it a combination of questions if you would like.

20 Keeping both strains and increasing the  
21 numbers with or without both doses. Do you want to  
22 qualify it further Fierer?

23 DR. FIERER: No. I mean I think the  
24 important advantage of dropping one strain is that you  
25 can increase the group size.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Right. So how many  
2 would object to going with the protocol as given with  
3 two strains?

4 (Show of hands.)

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: So we have three  
6 object -- four objections to going with both strains.  
7 So --

8 DR. EDWARDS: Perhaps the word is "prefer"  
9 and not object. I guess I --

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: How many prefer;  
11 how many prefer to go with both strains?

12 DR. EDWARDS: With both?

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yeah.

14 DR. EDWARDS: Okay. Can I just mention  
15 one thing. No matter whether you drop or not a  
16 strain, your numbers are still too small to --

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, we all  
18 acknowledge that Caroline.

19 DR. EDWARDS: -- achieve -- right. So  
20 that is the reason we're voting one versus another.

21 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yeah.

22 DR. EDWARDS: It's not --

23 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Preferentially we  
24 would prefer the numbers to be greater, but we  
25 acknowledge the expense, all of the difficulties, et

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 cetera.

2 Dr. Mittoon first and then Dr. Hoffman.

3 DR. MITTOON: I'd just like to make the  
4 point that in likelihood, we don't have to solve  
5 everything with this one study, and so I just want to  
6 throw that out. I would think that if this study, you  
7 know, goes forth, likely there will be many more and  
8 that one would have opportunity to perhaps address  
9 these different issues in that context.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, that is an  
11 important point, and there is sentiment here that if  
12 you stayed with one, you could increase the numbers.  
13 You could go with one dose or two doses, but you would  
14 be able to balance things more and attribute some of  
15 these to Dr. Fierer.

16 Dr. Hoffman.

17 DR. HOFFMAN: I would just say one doesn't  
18 necessarily have to exclude a priori that one couldn't  
19 determine differences in incubation period or pre-  
20 patent (phonetic) period even with eight individuals  
21 in a group. Certainly with 12 it's quite likely that  
22 one could.

23 And we've had studies in malaria where  
24 with those kinds of numbers one has seen differences  
25 in pre-patent periods, which as Mike points out is

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 potentially very important in terms of the efficiency,  
2 economy of the mode.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any other points  
4 before we move to the last question because we only  
5 have a few minutes left for our session today?

6 Yes, Dr. Hall.

7 DR. HALL: I just also want to offer as  
8 another potential that if -- it's been mentioned -- if  
9 you start with a low dose for both of those together,  
10 then if there is, say, no infectivity in one and  
11 there's infectivity in another, you still have an  
12 option of going to the higher dose.

13 Given the other way, if there's good  
14 infectivity in both of those strains at that time, the  
15 higher dose is not necessary. So you may be able to  
16 get for the same numbers more information.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Twelve and 12 is  
18 what you're proposing, the two different strains, same  
19 does?

20 DR. HALL: Right.

21 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes, I would just like  
22 to say with virulent organisms, too, I mean, if you  
23 imagine eventually doing a study with a vaccine group,  
24 you probably wouldn't have more than eight controls in  
25 the study. So that this will be the sample size that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 probably will be realistic in the future, and usually  
2 with virulent organisms you can get a pretty good idea  
3 of what would be a good dose.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Breiman.

5 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: With small numbers.

6 DR. BREIMAN: Is the numbers that we're  
7 talking about based on the practical limitation of the  
8 size of the ward or the amount of the budget for the  
9 study? Because it would be interesting to see sort of  
10 a statistical consideration with a few assumptions as  
11 to what you could observe with either eight or 12 or  
12 16.

13 I'm not sure how we got those numbers.

14 DR. TACKET: Well, the most important  
15 assumption would be the attack rate, and that's what  
16 we're here to find out. So I would suggest that we  
17 not get too distracted about concern about statistics  
18 because we really are asking what is the attack rate,  
19 which would be the most important thing to determine  
20 sample sizes for other studies.

21 DR. BREIMAN: But I mean even for that it  
22 would be nice to have a level of precision. I mean  
23 with eight, can you really say very much about the  
24 attack rate with, you know, just eight observed cases?

25 I mean you can give a number, but, you

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 know, how precise is that number?

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
3 Breiman.

4 If there are comments to be made, they  
5 should be made officially, recognized, and for the  
6 record, and so may I call upon someone here now who  
7 had his or her hand up? Yes, Dr. Snider.

8 DR. SNIDER: Well, I guess, you know, the  
9 answer to the question depends a lot on how likely you  
10 think it is that the two strains, you know, would have  
11 different clinical characteristics, and I guess I was  
12 basing my earlier comments on what I interpreted as an  
13 indication of extraordinarily high level of homology  
14 between the genomes of, you know, these two organisms  
15 and also measurements of their immunologic  
16 characteristics.

17 I think the more differences there are in  
18 those regards, the greater the likelihood that there  
19 may be some difference, and certainly then the greater  
20 the likelihood you could show, you know, a difference  
21 with a smaller study.

22 But I mean, it seems to me it depends to  
23 a large extent on how many, as was said, how many  
24 questions do you want to try to get the answer to in  
25 this first go-round, as pointed out by FDA, versus,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 you know, establishing a model that it can even be  
2 used, you know, for the purposes you intend or it has  
3 to be changed in some way.

4 And so I guess my concern is also the  
5 track record of one strain with regard to its safety  
6 record being know and the importance of ethically,  
7 politically, socially and everything of establishing,  
8 you know, a model and doing it safely as opposed to  
9 trying to pile too many different things on it and  
10 perhaps take more chances, if you will.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I'm afraid we've  
12 spent too much time on this issue. We have to get to  
13 the last point, and there were no votes on these.

14 The last question: does the consent form  
15 adequately address the potential risks to the  
16 volunteers?

17 And I'd like to start the discussion by  
18 getting feedback from you all on whether you thought  
19 that the general statement in there that there may be  
20 other organs -- doing a translation, that all organ  
21 systems conceivably might be involved with side  
22 effects, but there's no elaboration of them.

23 Dr. Adimora.

24 DR. ADIMORA: Actually I like the consent  
25 form and the process a lot. I do have a couple of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 questions.

2 One is a comment concerning the issue you  
3 just raised. I was wondering about the absence of a  
4 statement that people do, in fact, have a risk of  
5 death. I mean I think any time where there's a  
6 likelihood that people could become bacteremic, they  
7 probably should be aware that it's unlikely that  
8 they'll die, but they could, especially since I'm not  
9 sure that the general public really has a great  
10 understanding of what it really means to be  
11 bacteremic, and so that's a comment.

12 I wouldn't hard pedal it. It seems  
13 extremely unlikely, but I would think that people  
14 should be given an opportunity to weigh that risk for  
15 themselves even though it's quite small.

16 The question I had is given your past  
17 experience, who are the people that you feel are most  
18 likely to enroll in this study. I would assume that  
19 they are more likely to be university students, at  
20 least some of them, but I'm wondering who else is very  
21 likely to do this, given your past experience and your  
22 beliefs.

23 DR. TACKET: I don't think they'll be  
24 university students because they don't have 32 days to  
25 drop out of their lives and be in an isolation ward.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. ADIMORA: Well, they would in the  
2 summer or some Christmas vacations. I don't know  
3 exactly when you're planning to do it.

4 DR. TACKET: It's possible we might have  
5 some university students. I don't mean to discard  
6 that, but you're asking for the most likely volunteer.  
7 I think it's probably someone in the community who  
8 does not have a job, who has the time to participate  
9 in the study.

10 Now, I had mentioned earlier that in the  
11 screening process we are fairly picky about literacy,  
12 about people who have choices, and that sounds like  
13 kind of a vague concept, but when you interview a  
14 volunteer and they have never held a job, they can  
15 barely read the consent form, they're not able to read  
16 it and then respond to verbal questions about it, when  
17 they don't show up for consecutive appointments that  
18 they have said they would show up for, when there's a  
19 pattern of unemployment and irresponsibility, those  
20 folks don't get enrolled in our studies, but that's  
21 not written in black and white anywhere.

22 I think actually that's what was alluded  
23 to before. Why can't that be kind of codified somehow  
24 in a formal way? It would be hard to do.

25 So the short answer is there will be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 people from the community who have 30 days. We've had  
2 people who take time off for two week studies who are  
3 on vacation. So it's conceivable there might be  
4 someone who's employed at another job who would come  
5 in on their vacation time, but most of the time's  
6 people who are between jobs.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Do you have any  
8 suggestions Dr. Adimora to the consent form? You say  
9 that you like it generally speaking. Are there any  
10 serious omissions from it?

11 And I recognize that all of you have your  
12 hands up, but we'll give her a chance.

13 DR. ADIMORA: To me the most obvious  
14 omission is the one that I stated. I think that it  
15 could be stated without being horrifying that  
16 occasionally --

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Rarely.

18 DR. ADIMORA: -- rarely, very rarely --

19 DR. TACKET: No, we would be happy to add  
20 that. We have that in other consent forms. So this  
21 is not a big problem.

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: It doesn't inhibit  
23 every volunteer at all.

24 DR. ADIMORA: Right.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: No, let's just do

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 this real systematically. Dr. Danis hasn't had a  
2 chance to say very much, and then Dr. Sears. Did you  
3 have your hand up as well?

4 Ms. Knowles, you haven't said anything if  
5 you care to add anything.

6 First Dr. Danis.

7 DR. DANIS: I think the consent process as  
8 you described it before verbally was excellent. I  
9 think the written consent form and the questionnaire  
10 have some issues that might be added.

11 I think there might be some more stated  
12 about the possible consequences of remaining a carrier  
13 even though the probability is low. The employability  
14 if one is a carrier; issues about insurability if one  
15 is a carrier or insurability if one has any medical  
16 sequelae from this need to be addressed.

17 I think the issue of the fact that they  
18 will have to be rehospitalized if they remain -- if  
19 they have to have a second course of IV antibiotics  
20 would be important.

21 And I think that in speaking with you, Dr.  
22 Tacket, about how one deals with financially backing  
23 the medical care following this care, it seems like  
24 there are options that one addresses that are not  
25 stated in here, and I think there should be some

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 statement about every effort would be made to deal  
2 with the contracting agency in providing -- however  
3 you need to deal with this in a way -- I think the  
4 ethics of taking a volunteer and making them sick and  
5 saying that there will be no option for taking care of  
6 their medical sequelae is very problematic,  
7 particularly because the folks that you suspect will  
8 be the most eligible candidates are likely to be  
9 uninsured medically.

10 DR. TACKET: I'd like to comment on that  
11 quite a bit. The second in the consent form in  
12 italics is a boilerplate. For all consent forms at  
13 the University of Maryland it requires this exact  
14 verbiage, and it's horrible if you're read it. This  
15 came down from our IRB about 15 months ago, and we  
16 were horrified by it, and our sponsor, our financial  
17 sponsors were horrified by these words.

18 It's actually probably equally problematic  
19 not to include those words because those words are the  
20 actual contractual facts, reality, and perhaps I  
21 should defer to Dr. Lang or others from the contracts  
22 from NIAID who might want to comment on reimbursement.

23 At the moment the wording is essentially  
24 that if you have a complication, that you are  
25 responsible for the costs of the medical care related

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 to that, you or your insurance carrier, and that's the  
2 contractual agreement.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, that doesn't  
4 surprise most of us who know about IRB activities.  
5 This is true all over the country. It's been true for  
6 years. This is standard boilerplate material.  
7 Substitute University of something else for the  
8 University of Maryland.

9 Dr. Vanderpool.

10 DR. VANDERPOOL: Well, the ethics of that  
11 are pretty clear though that in most foreign countries  
12 you have to reimburse subjects that are harmed in  
13 research. In the U.S. you don't have to reimburse,  
14 but you've got to tell them if they're not to be  
15 reimbursed.

16 So I think that whether it's a boiler  
17 plate or not, it needs to be in there if they're not  
18 going to be, in fact, reimbursed or covered in some  
19 more thorough way.

20 And I would think that one of the  
21 requirements I would see as necessary for approving  
22 this consent form would be that you just change that  
23 boilerplate section. Instead of "university  
24 statement," have something like university statement  
25 involving safety and limited medical coverage, and put

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 this in bold print.

2 Let me say a couple more things. That's  
3 not the only issue on this form. For one thing, I  
4 think it reaches unintelligibility for a lot of  
5 ordinary people. I mean you look at the first  
6 paragraph and see the wording. "This is to  
7 participate in a clinical trial to establish a human  
8 model of typhoid fever." I don't think ordinary  
9 people are going to know what that means, or in the  
10 next sentence down, "In addition, the experimental  
11 design of the clinical trial."

12 I don't know. I think if you had enough  
13 time in the recruitment session they might know that,  
14 but there are numerous instances of this.

15 Third, I think there are, pertinent to the  
16 question under discussion, there are risks that aren't  
17 mentioned here. Several of the articles mention, for  
18 example, the possibility of perforation of the  
19 intestine during the first few days.

20 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: That's in here.

21 DR. VANDERPOOL: Is that in there?

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, it is.

23 DR. VANDERPOOL: The final thing then  
24 would be that I do think that the benefit section is -  
25 - and this is in keeping with the FDA, but I would go

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 beyond what the FDA recommends -- there are more  
2 benefits here than are mentioned, and you don't want  
3 to sell the protocol, but for a lot of people they're  
4 going to get a first rate physical exam and for nearly  
5 everyone they're going to be thinking about monetary  
6 compensation for the time.

7 So it seems to me you can say there are no  
8 physical benefits for you, but, and then mention the  
9 other benefits that are here.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That's a very good  
11 point, stressing more positive things, Dr. Vanderpool.

12 Okay. We have time for a couple more  
13 points to improvement of the consent form. We'll  
14 start down with Dr. Fierer and then work down the  
15 table here.

16 DR. FIERER: Yeah, I must say I really  
17 can't support this with the harm paragraph. I think,  
18 for one thing, the VA, in fact, does not have this  
19 policy. The VA is a health care system where they  
20 provide care to all eligible patients who are harmed  
21 in the course of a study free. So the only issue is  
22 money.

23 And when you're doing a study in which  
24 you're infecting people, it's quite different than  
25 doing a therapeutic study in which people might be

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 harmed, and I think that we bear an ethical  
2 responsibility to provide medical care to people in  
3 the highly unlikely event that they would be harmed,  
4 and I really think that that has to be our position  
5 here.

6 I don't care what the University of  
7 Maryland says.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: The responsibility  
9 section, not the details of potential risk, are you  
10 objecting to?

11 DR. FIERER: That's right.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That our  
13 responsibility ethically, to care for those who are,  
14 quote, unquote, injured as a consequence of enrolling  
15 in this study.

16 Dr. Hall.

17 DR. HALL: I also found in reading that  
18 that this may actually lead to a bias in selection.  
19 Certainly those who have no insurance I would think  
20 would be unwilling to sign up if they read that and  
21 understood it.

22 By this format here of having questions  
23 and so on, I think, my assumption is that these are  
24 going to be very well informed people by the time they  
25 are enrolled. I think it's a very unusual --

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                   CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:       If I could  
2 reemphasize the point of Dr. Vanderpool that one go  
3 through this protocol and clean up a lot of the  
4 language to make it understandable to the average  
5 person off the street.

6                   Okay. Dr. Snider and then Dr. Clements-  
7 Mann.

8                   DR. SNIDER: Several things. I agree with  
9 the latter statement. I don't know what the reading  
10 level of this is, but the reading level needs to be  
11 checked, and obviously at whatever reading level it  
12 is, then the subjects who are enrolled need to be  
13 matched up with the reading level. So generally you  
14 want to get it obviously down to an eighth grade level  
15 if at all possible.

16                   Since it was mentioned that a  
17 psychological evaluation is going to be done during  
18 the 48 hours, that's not as far as I could see  
19 mentioned in the consent form. I would suggest that  
20 that be added. If I overlooked it, I'm sorry for  
21 bringing it up.

22                   I think the benefits part should be  
23 strengthened, and I agree with what's been suggested,  
24 but also I think it should be made clearer what the  
25 benefits to society are because when you look at the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 polls or the surveys that have been done of people,  
2 why they do or do not participate in research, one of  
3 the major reasons people participate in research is to  
4 contribute to society, and if you don't have that  
5 spelled out in there, you're at a disadvantage. So I  
6 would encourage you to do that.

7 And finally, you mentioned your policy  
8 about how you deal with the economic incentives to  
9 participation, and it probably would be a good idea to  
10 just state your policy in that regard so that people  
11 who are reading that understand what your policy is.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Clements-Mann.

13 DR. CLEMENTS-MANN: Yeah, I agree that we  
14 all have this language in our consent form, but I just  
15 wondered if you could tell this Committee what would  
16 happen if someone had to be admitted for IV therapy.  
17 I mean could that be covered under your current  
18 system, taking care of -- I mean, you're not going to  
19 leave then or say, "If you can afford it, we want you  
20 to come in for 14 days."

21 DR. TACKET: Yeah, there are other  
22 precedents in other VTEUs, as you well know, of  
23 contracts paying for adverse events, so that I assume  
24 -- oh, Gina is here. Perhaps she can address this  
25 with more authority.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Could you give your  
2 name, please?

3 DR. RABINOVICH: Gina Rabinovich, National  
4 Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases.

5 The issue of indemnification from clinical  
6 trials is one that has been continuously discussed in  
7 depth with the VTEUs, as well as with our other  
8 systems. It is a difficult one for any federal agency  
9 outside of Department of Defense because we don't have  
10 the authority to indemnify.

11 We are able and have handled on a case-by-  
12 case basis payment for any -- for acute care costs,  
13 and the problem then becomes how does one define acute  
14 care costs.

15 Realistically speaking, something like a  
16 hospitalization that would be required because of  
17 exposure during a trial with something that could be  
18 covered under the contract, and we have done that in  
19 other situations on a case-by-case basis.

20 What we are unable to do, and that's what  
21 the word "indemnification" really means, is to provide  
22 funding for health care costs that go beyond the  
23 extension of the contract period because there is  
24 no -- it's really an OMB requirement that you have the  
25 funding which you would need to actually provide

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 indemnification.

2 So in terms of anything that would be  
3 relatively short term that would be a health care  
4 burden incurred because of participation in the trial,  
5 that can be handled, and generally we work with the  
6 investigator, their sense of what kind of insurance  
7 the subject has and assuring that the patient is  
8 provided for.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

10 Would this satisfy you, Dr. Fierer?

11 DR. FIERER: Well, yes, depending on what  
12 that time limit was. I mean what I'm really concerned  
13 about is supposing somebody has a bowel perforation,  
14 you know, a month after they leave the study that's  
15 related to this. That's going to be a very expensive  
16 hospitalization, and you know, would wipe somebody  
17 out.

18 It's highly unlikely, but I'd certainly  
19 want reassurances that it was covered.

20 DR. RABINOVICH: Right. What we're unable  
21 to cover are things that extend beyond the contract  
22 period, which, Mike, is like the year 2001. Is that  
23 it?

24 Yes, so it's short term in the sense of  
25 indemnification a la the Vaccine Injury Compensation

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 Program, which will compensate for lifetime care costs  
2 of specific adverse events, like vaccine associated  
3 paralytic polio. It's short in that sense.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, then the form  
5 would have to be modified to incorporate the specifics  
6 of this, and can you accept that, Dr. Levine, Dr.  
7 Tacket, FDA? I mean can you do that?

8 DR. RABINOVICH: It's really up to the  
9 IRB. I mean this is their language.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Right.

11 DR. RABINOVICH: It's something that we  
12 have attempted to clarify in the past. We would  
13 welcome working with them to do that.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: You'll have to work  
15 with them on this point.

16 Now, I realize that time has run out more  
17 than ten minutes ago, but I'd like anyone else at the  
18 table who has not had a chance to suggest revisions to  
19 the consent form to speak now if you will.

20 Dr. Sears.

21 DR. SEARS: I just want to reiterate what  
22 Dr. Danis said in that of all the adverse outcomes  
23 that could occur, the only one in my mind that may  
24 occur is that someone could become a chronic carrier  
25 because it's not clear that each person will be able

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 to get through day 14 days of ciprofloxacin, and if  
2 you go to alternative therapies, the chance of a  
3 chronic carrier state will go up.

4 So in that regard, I would just like to  
5 back up her comment that a sentence in the consent  
6 form to make the individual understand the economic  
7 implications of that in terms of employment, I think,  
8 is critical for the group of individuals who are  
9 likely to volunteer for this study, who although they  
10 may have choices, I staunchly believe have fewer  
11 choices than any individual in this room.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any other precise  
13 points on the form? Yes, Dr. Hoffman.

14 DR. HOFFMAN: In response to that, my take  
15 on it, if someone didn't have gall bladder disease,  
16 that almost you could eventually eradicate salmonella  
17 from everybody.

18 DR. SEARS: I think it's very unlikely.  
19 I agree with you. If you go to two weeks of IV  
20 ampicillin, I think it's very unlikely, but it has  
21 such a long term economic impact on an individual.

22 DR. HOFFMAN: I have one comment under  
23 potential risks. I would like to see the words,  
24 verbiage changed from in terms of the severe  
25 complications from "these occur rarely and almost

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 exclusively" to "these occur infrequently in natural  
2 disease and most commonly in persons" because it's not  
3 exclusively or even close to exclusively in person who  
4 haven't had antibiotics.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Okay.

6 DR. HOFFMAN: Which is what it says here.  
7 So just changing "rarely" to infrequently and "almost  
8 exclusively" to "most commonly," it would be a fairer  
9 statement.

10 DR. VANDERPOOL: Could I say a word about  
11 that?

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: One last point, Dr.  
13 Vanderpool.

14 DR. VANDERPOOL: There are two ways to go  
15 ethically with this. One is to be benevolent and to  
16 accept the articulate defense of Joshua Fierer in  
17 terms of how coverage needs to be supplied.

18 The other is to go for freedom and choice,  
19 which would say if you don't have coverage -- and this  
20 is one of the virtues I see in the consent form -- if  
21 you don't have coverage, you say it, but you say it in  
22 bold so that they know exactly what they're getting  
23 into and they make informed consent.

24 So there are two ways we could go. If the  
25 Committee wants to go with the benevolent model, then

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 great, but it can go -- if it goes with the freedom  
2 model, which is "take your chances; you won't get  
3 coverage at the University of Maryland," then at least  
4 we should really put it out there in a very clear,  
5 strong way so that they know exactly what they're  
6 doing.

7 I suspect most of us are not going to want  
8 the freedom model, but that's one way to go with it,  
9 and that's the federal regulation model.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

11 Ms. Knowles.

12 MS. KNOWLES: Yeah, I would agree with the  
13 concern expressed in terms of addressing treating  
14 medical conditions if needed beyond the initial study  
15 period of time, and I think we have to remember  
16 Tuskegee in this particular situation.

17 I know the next comment I'm going to have  
18 is probably something that is a huge albatross, but  
19 while I have done clinical research, I do understand  
20 consent forms, I do agree that there probably are a  
21 lot of people that, you know, look at this and they  
22 understand, you know, maybe a tenth, if that, and  
23 perhaps maybe it might be a general thing to suggest  
24 that IRBs review their consents for literacy levels.

25 There are actually software programs that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 can do that now.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

3 We'll have to conclude. I'll sum up very,  
4 very briefly that the Committee certainly is  
5 supportive of proceeding with the model and believes  
6 that the benefits outweigh any of the potential risks  
7 to the volunteers, and that we've made very specific  
8 responses to FDA questions where we could.

9 The area that we were vaguest on deals  
10 with the study design, the number of strains, but I  
11 think there would be support for proceeding with  
12 Quailles under conditions that we elaborated,  
13 consideration of increasing somewhat the size in the  
14 groups, and then most importantly, that many  
15 suggestions have been made regarding other aspects,  
16 ethical, moral issues, as well as the consent form.

17 So I hope this will be valuable to you,  
18 Dr. Pratt, Dr. Mittoon, as well as the sponsors.

19 I want to thank the Committee and guests  
20 here for a most invigorating discussion. Thank you.

21 We'll reconvene at 1:45 from lunch.

22 (Whereupon, at 12:49 p.m., the meeting was  
23 recessed for lunch, to reconvene at 1:45 p.m., the  
24 same day.)

25

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 A-F-T-E-R-N-O-O-N S-E-S-S-I-O-N

2 (1:49 p.m.)

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: If people could  
4 join us at the table who are supposed to be at the  
5 table, we can begin the afternoon session.

6 I thought since the composition of the  
7 table is slightly different, that we would do  
8 introductions again. So if you could all take a seat,  
9 please? Could we start with you, Dr. Webster? And  
10 could you give your affiliation?

11 DR. WEBSTER: Rob Webster, St. Jude's  
12 Children's Research Hospital.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We're doing  
14 introductions again.

15 DR. EICKHOFF: Ted Eickhoff, University of  
16 Colorado.

17 MEMBER HALL: Caroline Hall, Infectious  
18 Disease, University of Rochester.

19 MEMBER GREENBERG: Harry Greenberg,  
20 Stanford University and the Palo Alto VA Hospital.

21 DR. COX: Nancy Cox, Centers for Disease  
22 Control and Prevention.

23 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Roland Levandowski,  
24 Center for Biologics.

25 MEMBER EDWARDS: Cathy Edwards, Vanderbilt

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 University.

2 MEMBER CLEMENTS-MANN: Mary Lou  
3 Clements-Mann, Johns Hopkins University.

4 DR. SNIDER: Dixie Snider, Associate  
5 Director for Science, CDC.

6 MEMBER ESTES: Mary Estes, Molecular  
7 Virology, Baylor College of Medicine.

8 DR. KILBOURNE: Edwin Kilbourne, New York  
9 Medical College.

10 DR. BREIMAN: Rob Breiman, National  
11 Vaccine Program Office.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Pat Ferrieri,  
13 University of Minnesota Medical School. Everyone  
14 knows Mrs. Cherry, who is sitting to my left.

15 Well, this is an important afternoon. The  
16 past several years I recollect we've done a good deal  
17 of this on the phone after our January meeting, but we  
18 have the rare opportunity and pleasure of discussing  
19 this here with everyone face to face. And that's  
20 completion of decisions on the formulation of  
21 influenza virus vaccine for '98-'99. And the  
22 introduction and review will be done by Dr.  
23 Levandowski.

24 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Thank you.

25 SESSION 2 - OPEN SESSION

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                    COMPLETION OF FORMULATION OF  
2                    INFLUENZA VIRUS VACCINE FOR 1998-1999

3                    INTRODUCTION AND REVIEW

4                    DR. LEVANDOWSKI:    As has been already  
5                    stated, we're here today to finalize recommendations  
6                    for the influenza strains to be used to manufacture  
7                    vaccines for the 1998-1999 season.

8                    The Committee previously met on January  
9                    30th to begin the process of selecting strains. And  
10                    at that time, information was presented on  
11                    surveillance of new strains, on spread of those  
12                    strains in human populations, the antibody responses  
13                    to new strains after immunization with current  
14                    vaccines, and availability of candidate strains for  
15                    manufacturing.

16                    Based on the then current information, the  
17                    Committee recommended that the influenza vaccine for  
18                    1998-1998 be trivalent and that it contain an  
19                    influenza B/Harvin/07/94 component. Final decisions  
20                    on the remaining two strains were deferred for the  
21                    accumulation of additional information.

22                    For the H3N2 influenza A strain, a  
23                    recommendation for a change from the current vaccine  
24                    was made with a provisional recommendation than  
25                    A/Sydney/05/97-like component seemed to be needed

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 because of the increasing proportion of  
2 A/Sydney/05/97-like strains everywhere in the world,  
3 including the United States.

4 However, the provisional recommendation  
5 was made to permit review of more recent A/Sydney-like  
6 strains since it was not clear whether other more  
7 recent strains might demonstrate additional antigenic  
8 drift.

9 For the H1N1 viruses, the picture was less  
10 clear. Strains referred to as HI deletion mutants,  
11 which have been represented by A/Beijing/262/95 and  
12 characterized by significant alterations in antigenic  
13 characteristics as a result of amino acid sequence  
14 changes, including the deletion of an amino acid at  
15 position 134 of the hemagglutinin, these strains have  
16 been known for the past two to three years, but they  
17 have recently been increasing in number, particularly  
18 in Asia. In addition, these strains had been isolated  
19 in Africa at the time of our previous meeting.

20 A clinical trial using an experimental  
21 vaccine containing the A/Beijing/262/95 strain was  
22 shown to produce antibody responses in people that  
23 reacted with the H1 deletion viruses better than  
24 current vaccines and also produced antibodies to  
25 non-deletion strains that were similar to current

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 vaccines.

2 That decision was deferred because the  
3 epidemiology of spread was unclear and it was  
4 uncertain whether the clinical trials results were  
5 representative for H1 deletion strains which have been  
6 more recently identified.

7 In February, the WHO recommendations for  
8 influenza vaccines were made using data available here  
9 and also additional data that were collected between  
10 the two meetings.

11 Based on all of the information available  
12 at that time, the WHO recommended, as has been  
13 published already in the February 27th Weekly  
14 Epidemiological Record, which has been made available  
15 to the Committee, that the vaccines be trivalent and  
16 they contain an A/Sydney/05/97-like H3N2 component, an  
17 A/Beijing/262/95-like H1N1 component, and a  
18 B/Harvin/07/94-like component.

19 WHO did not recommend commercial  
20 production of an H5N1 vaccine but indicated its  
21 support of continued development of experimental  
22 vaccines and indicated that it will continue to  
23 monitor the situation with H5 influenza viruses.

24 We're going to take up the H5 part of the  
25 discussion in a later session this afternoon. Right

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 now we're going to present some additional data to  
2 help complete the vaccine recommendations. And for  
3 that, I'd like to invite Dr. Nancy Cox from CDC to  
4 present information on characterization of additional  
5 strains and surveillance.

6 And also I have asked Nancy if she would  
7 just go ahead when she is finished with that  
8 information after taking questions from the Committee  
9 with what we view as the options for selection.

10 DR. COX: Thanks, Roland.

11 ADDITIONAL SURVEILLANCE AND STRAIN CHARACTERIZATION

12 DR. COX: If everyone would just grab the  
13 package, if the Committee members would grab the  
14 package, of information from CDC, I think it will be  
15 easy to follow along.

16 On Page 2, there's a summary of the  
17 influenza season in the United States. And I think  
18 we'll go ahead and start with the first overhead. And  
19 I'll very briefly summarize the information that's on  
20 Page 2.

21 In this overhead, you can see that there  
22 are three of the four systems that we use to monitor  
23 influenza activity. First of all, in the top panel,  
24 you see the number of isolates of influenza that had  
25 been reported by the WHO collaborating labs in the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 United States.

2 In the middle panel, there are the weekly  
3 estimates of influenza activity from the state  
4 epidemiologists. And here we're just showing the  
5 number of states that report widespread and regional  
6 activity.

7 In the bottom panel, you see  
8 influenza-like illness reported by our sentinel  
9 physicians. And what you can see is that influenza  
10 activity actually peaked overall according to all  
11 three systems during weeks three through five of 1998.

12 Now, there were a total of approximately  
13 68,000 specimens which were tested by the WHO  
14 collaborating labs for influenza. And nearly 10,900  
15 of these were positive for influenza. This is an  
16 increase over the number that we normally have  
17 reported to us at this time of the year.

18 Of the influenza-positive specimens, 99.8  
19 percent are influenza Type A. And though only 20  
20 percent-24 percent of these viruses have been  
21 subtyped, of these, 99.8 percent are influenza A(H3N2)  
22 viruses.

23 Next overhead, please. Now, the peak of  
24 influenza activity as reported by state and  
25 territorial epidemiologists occurred during the week

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 ending February 7th. During that week, a total of 47  
2 states reported regional or widespread activity.

3 And in the bottom panel, you see the  
4 activity was reported for the most current reporting  
5 week ending March 14th. And here we have a total of  
6 only 17 states reporting regional or widespread  
7 activity. So clearly influenza activity has been  
8 dropping quite markedly.

9 Now, the third overhead shows the  
10 percentage of deaths attributable to pneumonia and  
11 influenza as reported by the Vital Statistics Offices  
12 of 122 cities. Pneumonia and mortality levels  
13 increased above the epidemic threshold during early  
14 January and have remained above the threshold for the  
15 past ten weeks.

16 So, in summary, this season's influenza  
17 epidemic has been characterized by a predominance of  
18 influenza A(H3N2) viruses and by excess influenza and  
19 pneumonia-related mortality.

20 Now we're going to move on and talk about  
21 the viruses. On Page 7 of your handout, you'll see a  
22 frequency table for influenza A(H1N1) isolates  
23 characterized by our WHO collaborating lab at CDC.  
24 We'll concentrate on the panel down below.

25 While we really haven't had a great number

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 of H1N1 viruses to examine, I would like to point out  
2 that we have one Beijing/262 deletion mutant-like  
3 virus from the United States and we have five from  
4 Asia.

5 If we look at the time period before this,  
6 I want just to remind you that we had a large number  
7 of Beijing/262-like strains from Asia. And during  
8 that same time period, we had no Bayern-like strains.

9 Next overhead, please. Well, I don't have  
10 any HI tables for the H1N1 viruses. So I hope you can  
11 remember the patterns that you saw last year, last  
12 January, and then the year before as well. And I'll  
13 just remind you that the Beijing/262/95 and  
14 Bayern-like viruses have greater than eight-fold  
15 reciprocal differences in Hi titers between them.

16 Now we see that the Beijing/262-like  
17 viruses have been detected in Japan, in Taiwan. Of  
18 course, last year we knew that they were detected  
19 throughout China and in Hong Kong and Singapore, but  
20 now we have added Taiwan and Japan to the list. We  
21 have talked about the isolation in Senegal in August  
22 of '97 and in South Africa in November of '97.

23 In addition, since we last met, two  
24 isolates have been obtained in France during January  
25 of 1998. And a single travel-related isolation of

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 virus occurred in California in February.

2 So, in summary, we now have these viruses  
3 detected on four continents. And given the fact that  
4 influenza surveillance really isn't particularly good  
5 in Africa, the number of isolated we have probably  
6 reflects a reasonable amount of activity there.

7 Next overhead, please. Now, the last time  
8 we met, you will remember that it appeared that in  
9 experimental trials conducted by SmithKline Beecham in  
10 Germany, the A/Beijing/262 experimental vaccine  
11 induced bitter cross-protective immunity against the  
12 Bayern-like strains, then vice versa. In fact, the  
13 antibody titers induced by the Beijing/262 vaccine  
14 were higher against the Bayern-like strains than  
15 against the homologous strain.

16 Therefore, we retested the sera that we  
17 had from the experimental trial with several  
18 Bayern-like and several Beijing/262-like viruses to  
19 confirm our earlier data. And the results are shown  
20 in the coming overhead.

21 So for the adult population, we can see  
22 that the post-vaccine geometric mean titers are indeed  
23 a bit higher for the Bayern-like strains, which are  
24 listed here, as opposed to the Beijing/262 or  
25 vaccine-like strains listed here.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           We're not really sure why the titers  
2           against the Hong Kong/408 strain are so low. Perhaps  
3           it's just one of those observations that we make from  
4           time to time, but we don't put any particular  
5           significance on this observation.

6           So both of these populations, first the  
7           population that was not previously vaccinated and the  
8           population that had been vaccinated the previous year,  
9           showed this difference.

10           Next overhead, please. This was also  
11           reflected in results for the elderly population, where  
12           you see that in individuals who received the  
13           Beijing/262-like experimental vaccine. They were  
14           slightly higher geometric mean titers,  
15           post-vaccination against the Bayern-like strains than  
16           for the Beijing/262-like strains. So we see that we  
17           get better reciprocal cross-protection by using the  
18           Beijing/262 vaccine.

19           Now, I hope you can recall that in  
20           January, we saw that when we used the Bayern-like  
21           vaccine-like candidate, Johannesburg, we got very low  
22           levels of antibody against the Beijing/262-like  
23           candidates. So this is an asymmetric cross that we're  
24           seeing here.

25           Next overhead, please. Now we're going to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 be moving on to the HI reactions of H3N2 strains. And  
2 I'm not going to show you an overhead of the HI table  
3 on page 12. We're going to skip right on to Page 13,  
4 which is representative of what we're seeing now.

5 It's a fairly recent test that was  
6 conducted on the 5th of March. And you can see that  
7 here we have Wuhan-like titers, titers against  
8 Wuhan-like strains that are high in this column, where  
9 we're using the Wuhan vaccine, and titers that are  
10 high against the Sydney-like viruses when we're using  
11 the Sydney antiserum here.

12 And so you can very easily pick out the  
13 Wuhan-like and the Sydney-like strains, and you can  
14 see that we have in this table two strains from the  
15 United States that are Wuhan-like and a larger number  
16 of strains that are Sydney-like.

17 Likewise, we can see that there are two  
18 strains from France which are Wuhan-like and then a  
19 larger number of strains from Japan, Guam, Korea, the  
20 U.K., and France which are all Sydney-like.

21 Next, please. So when we look at the  
22 frequency of Sydney-like strain that have been  
23 isolated since October of 1997, we see that in the  
24 United States, we have a total of 188 H3N2 strains  
25 which have been antigenically characterized. And 144

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 of those are Sydney-like while only 44 are Wuhan-like.

2 And also you can see if you follow along  
3 here, no matter what the geographic location is, we  
4 have more Sydney-like strains than we have Wuhan-like  
5 strains circulating. And this is shown even more  
6 clearly on the next overhead.

7 This is the geographic distribution, which  
8 we have updated since the end of January. And what is  
9 on this map that wasn't apparent before because we  
10 didn't know about it before is that, actually, there  
11 were Sydney-like isolates that occurred in Japan in  
12 January of 1997. And we just found out about those  
13 rather recently.

14 You can see that there are Sydney-like  
15 strains all over the United States. And, actually,  
16 although we don't have any that we have analyzed from  
17 Africa, I'm not sure whether other centers have any or  
18 not. But basically Sydney-like viruses have been  
19 isolated from all continents from except perhaps  
20 Africa.

21 Next overhead. Here is where you can  
22 clearly see that the proportion of Sydney-like strains  
23 has increased dramatically since September of 1997.  
24 So that now of the strains that we have characterized  
25 worldwide, the majority, approximately 80 percent, are

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Sydney-like.

2 If we look at the distribution in the  
3 United States -- and here the numbers are slightly  
4 higher than they are for those that are antigenically  
5 characterized because we have been running a bit ahead  
6 in terms of the genetic characterization that we're  
7 doing. You can see that we have about 78 percent of  
8 strains which are Sydney-like isolated from the United  
9 States.

10 Okay. Next, please. I decided to keep  
11 the summary very, very simple. Clearly for H3N2  
12 viruses, Sydney-like strains are predominating  
13 worldwide. And they constitute approximately 80  
14 percent of U.S. H3N2 strains. Beijing/262/95-like  
15 strains have spread and now have been isolated in  
16 Asia, Africa, Europe, and North America.

17 Are there any questions now?

18 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Does the Committee  
19 have any questions for Dr. Cox? Dr. Webster?

20 DR. WEBSTER: Nancy, could we go back to  
21 Page 9 and the Hong Kong/408/97? This is the  
22 serological responses. I wasn't clear what the 14  
23 percent or 14 in the post-vaccination --

24 DR. COX: I'm sorry?

25 DR. WEBSTER: On Page 9, --

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. COX: Yes.

2 DR. WEBSTER: -- the clinical trial  
3 serological responses to Hong Kong/408/97, that rather  
4 strange response. What does it mean?

5 DR. COX: Yes. We've looked at the  
6 sequence of the strain and so on. And I'm not really  
7 sure why that particular strain is so low, but we have  
8 seen this occasionally in the past. We're dealing  
9 with an MDCK isolate. And sometimes we get lower  
10 responses to MDCK-grown viruses than to a grown  
11 counterpart.

12 So we really haven't attached very much  
13 significance to that. We have looked at the sequence.  
14 We don't see anything unusual about the sequence of  
15 BHA. So I think it's some kind of a reflection of the  
16 technical matter in the test, rather than anything  
17 that we really have to worry about in terms of the  
18 virus characteristics.

19 DR. KILBOURNE: Nancy?

20 DR. COX: Yes?

21 DR. KILBOURNE: Do you have any database  
22 that would allow you to estimate the number of vaccine  
23 failures in terms of the H3N2 components?

24 DR. COX: No, no. I don't think there's  
25 any database that exists in the United States at all.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. KILBOURNE: Well, at some point  
2 post-epidemic can you make that estimate from any  
3 source?

4 DR. COX: No. We don't get vaccination  
5 status for most of the isolates that we receive. So  
6 we have no idea if the person was vaccinated or not.

7 Now, there have been some observational  
8 studies of vaccine effectiveness, and there was a  
9 publication in last week's MMWR concerning vaccine  
10 failures, if you will, in nursing homes. And there  
11 was also an outbreak in a vaccinated military  
12 population.

13 So vaccine effectiveness was calculated,  
14 to the best of our ability. And it appeared that  
15 vaccine effectiveness was quite low this year. All of  
16 the four outbreaks that we reported in the MMWR were  
17 Sydney-like outbreaks.

18 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider?

19 DR. SNIDER: Nancy, how many more isolates  
20 do you have to characterize in detail? And do you  
21 have some sense of whether you have more H1N1s that  
22 you need to do additional work on?

23 DR. COX: We've tested all the H1N1s that  
24 we have received so far. Our big backlog is really  
25 with the H3N2 strains.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: If there are no  
2 further questions, we'll proceed with the program,  
3 then.

4 OPTIONS FOR STRAIN SELECTION

5 DR. COX: Again, I've kept this overhead  
6 very, very simple. I think that we for the H3N2  
7 vaccine component clearly need to change. And the  
8 Sydney-like, Sydney/05/97-like, strain really appears  
9 to be the option that we have at this time.

10 We don't have an indication that there are  
11 new variants of H3N2 that are antigenically distinct  
12 and genetically distinct. So it seems that the  
13 Sydney-like vaccine candidate is our only clear  
14 option.

15 For the H1N1 vaccine component, we have  
16 two options. One is to retain the current vaccine  
17 component. and then the other option is to change the  
18 H1 vaccine component to an A/Beijing/262-like strain.

19 I think that given the fact that we have  
20 seen this major antigenic difference between the  
21 Beijing/262 and Bayern-like strains and given that we  
22 have detected the Beijing/262 strains on four  
23 continents now, this option must be carefully  
24 considered and considered in the light that when you  
25 have a vaccine that's based on the Beijing/262 virus,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 you get better reciprocal, actually much better  
2 reciprocal, cross-protection against the Bayern than  
3 you do if you use the Bayern-like candidate. And in  
4 that case, you get very low levels of antibody against  
5 the Beijing/262-like virus.

6 Are there any questions or comments?

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Everyone is burned  
8 out from the morning session? I think the data is so  
9 familiar, Nancy, that we don't find it too surprising.  
10 Dr. Estes?

11 DISCUSSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

12 MEMBER ESTES: One of the questions we  
13 discussed at the end of January, I guess, was the  
14 growth properties of the viruses. So if you make the  
15 recommendation to change the second recommendation,  
16 are there good lots of virus available to do that?

17 DR. COX: Roland may want to comment on  
18 that because he has more information from the vaccine  
19 manufacturers.

20 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Right. There are  
21 vaccine candidate strains that are available. And we  
22 do have information from manufacturers are how they  
23 grow. It's very clear that in the case of the H1N1  
24 strains, that the A/Johannesburg/82/96 strain, the nib  
25 39 reassortant, is vastly superior. It's one of the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 best growing reassortant viruses that has been made in  
2 a long time.

3 The Beijing/262/95-like reassortants grow  
4 better than the wild type, but the description that we  
5 have from manufacturers is that they're not growing as  
6 well, certainly not as well as the nib 39 reassortant  
7 and more consistent with what was seen or maybe even  
8 a little but lower than what was seen with the A/Texas  
9 reassortant from previous years.

10 So there are reassortant viruses that are  
11 available for manufacturing. There are certainly  
12 differences between these two strains, as we often  
13 see.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Other questions?  
15 Dr. Kilbourne?

16 DR. KILBOURNE: One of the reassortants  
17 that Roland is talking about is our X-127, which is  
18 the prototype for the Beijing/262. We'd have to call  
19 it a medium-high yield and reassortant. We know it's  
20 not a 62 reassortant.

21 We dropped it a year ago on the advice of  
22 all concerned because at that point the epidemiologic  
23 faith of that strain wasn't very obvious. And it was  
24 restricted to one or two continents at that point.

25 There's no reason why we can't exhume that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 and do better with it by incorporating further genes,  
2 but at the moment, as Roland points out, it's only a  
3 medium yielder, still better than wild type.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Are there other  
5 presentations, Roland, or is that it?

6 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Other did you say  
7 hesitations or --

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Presentations. Not  
9 presents. Presentations.

10 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: We don't have the  
11 additional information to present at this point except  
12 along the lines of strains and reagents, the question  
13 that just came up.

14 There are also now two reassortants that  
15 are available for the A/Sydney strain. The one that,  
16 of course, has the most experience is the IVR108,  
17 which has been used in manufacturing for Australia and  
18 in Australia.

19 And our laboratory this past week has come  
20 up with a strain that looks like it's possibly a  
21 little bit better growing than the IVR108, but it's at  
22 the point where there's not a lot of characterization  
23 and it may not be something that will be useful just  
24 because of the timing of the development.

25 For all of the strains that are out there,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 we have reagents that are available for the current  
2 vaccine strains that can be sent to manufacturers now  
3 and can be used for interim testing if there are new  
4 strains that are selected.

5 We're about to start production of sheep  
6 antisera for both the A/Sydney/597-like strain and  
7 also the Beijing/262-like strain pending the outcome  
8 here. Those reagents would not be available for use  
9 until sometime in May because it takes several weeks  
10 to produce them and qualify them.

11 So, as in previous years, the new reagents  
12 would not be available until later in the season.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Eickhoff?

14 DR. EICKHOFF: I would just like to ask  
15 Dr. Kilbourne: Did your comments suggest that if you  
16 are asked to work further with the X-127 reassortant  
17 that that could be polished, if you will, in time for  
18 this year's production?

19 DR. KILBOURNE: Whether in time or not, I  
20 can't guess, but from past experience, we should be  
21 able to get the other genes in. We have been  
22 concentrating, really, on trying to make a better  
23 Sydney reassortant, and we have not made one better  
24 than the one that now exists, and also starting to  
25 work on the Hong Kong reassortant, the H5.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. EICKHOFF: Yes, right.

2 DR. KILBOURNE: But if there's any  
3 indication of acceptance, we'll go back to X-127.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Is there anyone  
5 here from industry who would like to make some  
6 spontaneous remarks or any information you would like  
7 to share with us at this time? Now is the  
8 opportunity.

9 (No response.)

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, this is all  
11 that we're going to hear about the two remaining  
12 decisions we have to make, then. So why don't we --  
13 you might remember at the end of January that we made  
14 the decision on B. And we leaned in the direction of  
15 choosing A/Sydney/05/97 but felt we wanted to hear  
16 more information a bit later. And then, according to  
17 one of the throw-away newspapers, I said that H1N1 was  
18 more problematic. That is indeed the case.

19 I would entertain a motion for the  
20 composition of the choice of the H3N2 strain. We'll  
21 have a formal vote on it, then. Anyone care to make  
22 a motion that we will then vote on? Dr. Edwards?

23 MEMBER EDWARDS: Scientifically it looks  
24 like the Beijing is a good choice.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: For the H3N2?

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 MEMBER EDWARDS: Sydney.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Oh, Sydney.

3 MEMBER EDWARDS: A/Sydney for the H3N2 and  
4 Beijing for the --

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes. So we have a  
6 motion. Anyone second it?

7 MEMBER GREENBERG: Second.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: So we have a motion  
9 on the floor to accept A/Sydney/05/97 as the H3N2  
10 choice for '98-'99 vaccine. Unless there's further  
11 discussion, we'll start voting with Dr. Edwards. Yes  
12 or no?

13 MEMBER EDWARDS: I agree with the motion.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Clements-Mann?  
15 Mary Lou? Dr. Clements?

16 MEMBER CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes, I agree.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider?

18 DR. SNIDER: I agree.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes?

20 MEMBER ESTES: I agree.

21 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Kilbourne?

22 DR. KILBOURNE: I agree. I think we have  
23 to realize that we're picking the wrong strain because  
24 with the penetration of the Sydney this year,  
25 something else is going to evolve. But I think we can

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 rely on enough heterovariant immunity to get through.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes.

3 DR. KILBOURNE: And also it should be a  
4 light H3N2 year next year.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes. That's  
6 prophetic but hopefully true.

7 Dr. Breiman?

8 DR. BREIMAN: I agree.

9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Webster?

10 DR. WEBSTER: I agree.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Eickhoff?

12 DR. EICKHOFF: Agree.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hall.

14 MEMBER HALL: I agree, but can I ask Dr.  
15 Kilbourne: Do you have a soothsaying prediction for  
16 which strain will come next year, then, if it's not  
17 going to be Sydney, since this is unusual?

18 DR. KILBOURNE: That's a prediction. Did  
19 I get your question?

20 MEMBER HALL: Yes. I mean, which of the  
21 strains have you decided should be it next year? Do  
22 you have any yet?

23 DR. KILBOURNE: Will I put that on the  
24 record?

25 MEMBER HALL: Sure.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 DR. KILBOURNE: Why not? Am I missing  
2 your question still? Well, I would guess that we will  
3 have less H3N2 than we've had the last two years --

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: And so he's not  
5 predicting --

6 DR. BREIMAN: So what is coming?

7 DR. KILBOURNE: -- based on the  
8 pervasiveness and penetrance of the virus this year  
9 because there is an old, old pattern that doesn't  
10 always repeat at the biennial periodicity of these  
11 strains.

12 MEMBER HALL: I was wondering whether you  
13 thought the H3N2 that would be coming, even if it's  
14 not the prominent one, will replace Sydney and which  
15 one that would be, if you have any predictions in  
16 that.

17 DR. KILBOURNE: Well, I wouldn't dare  
18 predict that, but I think it's going to be different.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

20 Dr. Adimora?

21 DR. KILBOURNE: How efficient I don't  
22 know.

23 MEMBER ADIMORA: I agree.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Greenberg?

25 MEMBER GREENBERG: I agree.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: For the record, I  
2 vote yes as well. I know how boring this might be to  
3 some of you to vote like this, but this is very  
4 important for FDA and industry, CDC as well.

5 So we'll move to the other issue, and this  
6 will require a little bit of discussion, then, or  
7 using a crystal ball. This is the choice of the H1N1  
8 strain and whether we retain the current  
9 A/Bayern/07/95 or switch to the A/Beijing/262/95-like,  
10 keeping in mind the immunologic data showing the  
11 excellent cross-protection of the A/Bayern by the  
12 A/Beijing/262/95, all the other uncertainties about  
13 the epidemiologic shifts that could take place.

14 And so is there further elucidation of  
15 this point before we consider making a recommendation  
16 to vote on? Dr. Webster, would you like to lead the  
17 discussion on this point?

18 DR. WEBSTER: Well, based on what we have  
19 heard from Dr. Cox on the cross-protection between  
20 these strains induced by the Beijing/262 and the  
21 cross-protection, it would look as though a change is  
22 merited. And if we look at the distribution, the  
23 worldwide distribution would also indicate that a  
24 change should be made.

25 There is some little concern about the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Hong Kong/408/97 and that information that's not  
2 clear. But overall the cross-protection in the adult  
3 population convinces me that the change is indicated.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Can I ask for a  
5 point of clarification, then? The numbers are very  
6 small on Page 7 of the handout, Dr. Cox. And the  
7 prevalence of the A/Beijing was greater in the  
8 immediate quarter, from April through September.

9 The shift to a/Bayern is a more recent one  
10 but, again, based on relatively small numbers. And it  
11 seems like there's been a flip-flop of this type  
12 before in October through March a year ago.

13 We had the flip Bayern and then Bayern  
14 decreased in April through September. And now Bayern  
15 has flipped up again the small number that's probably  
16 due to immunity that's been induced to the other  
17 strains.

18 But do you have anything else to add to  
19 this data at all?

20 DR. COX: I think that one of the problems  
21 for us has been that we really haven't received  
22 viruses from China in a very timely manner over the  
23 past six months.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That's what I'm  
25 worried about, that most of the influences have been

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 from China. And we don't see that in the data you  
2 presented.

3 DR. COX: But because we only have five  
4 strains from Asia. We very recently received a large  
5 group of viruses from China. And, according to the  
6 information that we have so far, we believe the H1s  
7 that were in that package will be Beijing/262-like.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Okay. That's --

9 DR. COX: This table does not reflect  
10 information from the other WHO collaborating centers.  
11 So this information does not reflect the data from  
12 Japan or the data from Europe either because we didn't  
13 receive the viruses from France.

14 So they're not listed here, but we know  
15 that they appear on the map because we know that they  
16 were isolated.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: And they're  
18 Beijing-like?

19 DR. COX: They're Beijing-like, yes.

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: This is very  
21 helpful. We always need a constant refreshing of  
22 this.

23 Other points on this? Would anyone care  
24 to make a motion based on the discussion, Dr.  
25 Webster's thoughts? Dr. Kilbourne, do you have an

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 opinion? Dr. Kilbourne, do you have a strong opinion  
2 about the choice of the H1N1 strain for the vaccine?

3 DR. KILBOURNE: Not any strong opinion,  
4 but I do note that the baseline pre-immunization  
5 titers are lowest to that strain. I think that's  
6 worrisome, particularly that there has been the  
7 seeding of the five continents, --

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Right, with the  
9 Beijing.

10 DR. KILBOURNE: -- even though the data  
11 are very meager.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes. Well, would  
13 anyone care to make a motion about the H1N1 strain,  
14 then? Dr. Estes?

15 MEMBER ESTES: I move that we change the  
16 strain to the A/Beijing/262.

17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Very good. A  
18 second to that? Dr. Greenberg?

19 MEMBER GREENBERG: Second.

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Okay. We'll start  
21 the voting, then, at this end. Dr. Webster?

22 DR. WEBSTER: I recommend that we change  
23 to the Beijing/262 strain.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Eickhoff?

25 DR. EICKHOFF: Yes.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Hall?  
2 MEMBER HALL: Yes.  
3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Adimora?  
4 MEMBER ADIMORA: I agree.  
5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Greenberg?  
6 MEMBER GREENBERG: Yes.  
7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Edwards?  
8 MEMBER EDWARDS: Yes.  
9 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Clements-Mann?  
10 MEMBER CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes.  
11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider?  
12 DR. SNIDER: Yes.  
13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes?  
14 MEMBER CLEMENTS-MANN: Yes.  
15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Kilbourne?  
16 DR. KILBOURNE: Yes.  
17 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Breiman?  
18 DR. BREIMAN: Yes but with the proviso the  
19 one question I wanted to ask Nancy is: Is the lack  
20 of, what appears to be a lack of, a homologous  
21 response on Page 10 in the elderly group that has not  
22 been vaccinated meaningful at all? I mean, there's  
23 only 33 percent or something like that that had  
24 elevated titers with the X-127 strain.  
25 DR. COX: I think that these sera have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1       been tested in a variety of labs. And our titers  
2       always tend to be somewhat lower than those obtained  
3       by other investigators. And it was true in this case  
4       as well that our titers were somewhat lower.

5               But we do, in fact, often see that the  
6       elderly do not respond as well as we would like, even  
7       to the homologous strain. So I wouldn't say that this  
8       is really different from what we have often seen in  
9       the past.

10               CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: The official vote  
11       of mine is to endorse the adoption of the  
12       A/Beijing/262/95.

13               That's the end of the formal discussion  
14       here. Very final points, Dr. Kilbourne?

15               DR. KILBOURNE: Well, yes. With reference  
16       to the elderly, I think that may reflect original  
17       antigenic sin. If you measure their antibodies to  
18       earlier H1s going way back, they might have been going  
19       up considerably. So we often have this problem with  
20       the elderly, as Nancy was saying.

21               CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you. We  
22       always bringing up Biblical issues here.

23               (Laughter.)

24               CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Roland, I can't  
25       believe this, but it's about 2:33 and we're ready to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 start the open session on the H5N1 virus. Are you  
2 ready?

3 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Sure. If you're ready,  
4 we're ready.

5 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We're ready. We've  
6 been waiting eagerly all day. We were so tremendously  
7 impressed at the end of January with all of the data  
8 presented on the H5N1 strain, so-called Hong Kong flu,  
9 and want to again give credit to all of the different  
10 agencies who educated us with FDA, CDC, and NIH. Dr.  
11 Levandowski will start off.

12 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Okay. Thank you.

13 SESSION 3 - OPEN SESSION

14 UPDATE ON H5N1 INFLUENZA

15 INTRODUCTION

16 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Again, we'll try to be  
17 brief on this session, as we have been on the previous  
18 one. During this session, what we hope to do is to  
19 provide an update for the Committee on H5N1 influenza  
20 A viruses.

21 To date, no cases have been identified  
22 outside Hong Kong. And the onset of the last  
23 confirmed case of H5N1 infection in man occurred in  
24 Hong Kong. And the date of that last onset was still  
25 December 28th. That's in the face of continued

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 heightened surveillance in that area of the world.

2 Altogether there were 18 cases of H5N1  
3 infection confirmed in adults and children. There  
4 were eight cases of pneumonia. And there were six  
5 deaths among those patients. So clearly the H5N1  
6 strains have demonstrated significant potential for  
7 morbidity and mortality in man.

8 The new cases in Hong Kong, of course,  
9 ceased coincidentally with the removal of the chickens  
10 that were infected with H5N1 viruses from live poultry  
11 markets.

12 Chickens have now been reintroduced into  
13 Hong Kong markets as of February, and they have been  
14 coming in under intense scrutiny and screening for  
15 H5N1. That strategy seems to be successful at this  
16 time.

17 What remains unclear is whether the cases  
18 in Hong Kong represent an isolated event that's  
19 related to the high concentration of infection in  
20 domestic poultry or whether it's the opening gambit of  
21 introduction of a new influenza A subtype, which we  
22 talk about as antigenic shift in man. And, of course,  
23 I'll remind you we haven't seen an antigenic shift for  
24 several decades now, a true antigenic shift.

25 At the previous meeting, the Committee

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 gave a very strong recommendation to us to proceed  
2 with activities to develop and test experimental  
3 vaccines for influenza A(H5N1) viruses. We got that  
4 message loud and clear.

5 And the national and the international  
6 influenza community is proceeding in the developmental  
7 efforts. And I think that's reflected in the WHO  
8 recommendations, indicating that they, too, agree that  
9 these vaccines need to be developed and experimented  
10 with.

11 Our presentations in this particular  
12 session will focus on the continuing activities that  
13 are relate to surveillance and to vaccine development  
14 since those things go hand in hand.

15 Not everyone involved in the efforts that  
16 we'll be discussing are represented here today,  
17 although in some sense maybe there are representatives  
18 from most of the different groups involved.

19 But we're trying to keep it brief. And so  
20 we will attempt to give a comprehensive summary by a  
21 few of us on the activities that are being undertaken  
22 by many.

23 To start off, I've asked Dr. Nancy Cox  
24 from CDC if she would again give us an update on  
25 surveillance activities.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                                    UPDATE ON EPIDEMIOLOGICAL DATA

2                                    DR. COX:    Today I'm going to confine my  
3                                    remarks to some of the lab data that we have  
4                                    generated.    I'm really not going to talk very much  
5                                    about the epidemiologic situation in Hong Kong because  
6                                    I think you had a very good update by K. G. Fakuda at  
7                                    the end of January and I don't think I can really add  
8                                    very much to that as we have not finished testing all  
9                                    the sera that we have received from Hong Kong.

10                                    What we plan to do is complete all of the  
11                                    testing of the cohort sera and then release the  
12                                    results at one time.    And we're having to test those  
13                                    sera using a variety of tests, including  
14                                    microneutralization, Western blot, and ELISA, so that  
15                                    we know how the results correlate for these different  
16                                    tests.    So it's taking us a bit longer than we had  
17                                    originally anticipated.

18                                    First overhead.    We have been collecting  
19                                    chicken jokes.    So in case anyone in the audience has  
20                                    a chicken joke they would like to donate to the Hong  
21                                    Kong investigation team, please let us know.

22                                    We see that this incident in Hong Kong has  
23                                    given new meaning to:    Why did the chicken cross the  
24                                    road?    This one obviously was getting out of Hong  
25                                    Kong.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1           Next overhead, please. You probably  
2 remember from our January discussion that we have  
3 observed that there are really two genetic and  
4 antigenic groups among the strains isolated from  
5 humans in Hong Kong.

6           One group is represented by Hong Kong/156,  
7 shown in this column here. And the virus, the  
8 antiserum is along this column here and the antigen  
9 that's along this row here.

10           And we can see that antiserum to the Hong  
11 Kong/156 covers the Hong Kong virus itself quite well  
12 but really doesn't cover viruses in Group 2  
13 particularly well.

14           We have continued to make antisera to a  
15 variety of viruses in Group 1 and Group 2. And this  
16 observation has pretty well held up. Antisera and  
17 this particular antiserum to Hong Kong/483, in  
18 contrast, covers viruses in both groups quite well.

19           So, once again, we're seeing a kind of  
20 asymmetric reaction in the hemagglutinin inhibition  
21 test so that serum to viruses from the second group  
22 seem to cover viruses in both groups better than  
23 antiserum to viruses in Group 1 do.

24           Next overhead, please. The other thing I  
25 should point out here is that -- and I could have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 pointed it out in the previous HI table as well -- is  
2 that we had hoped that the duck/Singapore/97 strain  
3 might provide a good apathogenic surrogate virus which  
4 could be used instead of these highly pathogenic  
5 viruses. That is, they're highly pathogenic for  
6 chickens as well as for people. And so we had hoped  
7 that this duck/Singapore strain could be used perhaps  
8 as a vaccine candidate.

9 But, unfortunately, you can see the  
10 homologous titer is 120 here. And, unfortunately,  
11 viruses in this group are not terribly well-covered by  
12 the antiserum to the Singapore strain. And so we see  
13 that it's behaving similarly to the Hong Kong/156  
14 antiserum.

15 The other antisera that we have here tend  
16 to cover the viruses in both groups better. And, in  
17 particular, we see that the antiserum to Isolate 491  
18 actually covers viruses in both groups particularly  
19 well.

20 We have looked at the sequence of this, at  
21 the hemagglutinin of this strain carefully. And it  
22 has a very good match to the consensus sequence. So  
23 the sequence of 491 has a very good match to the  
24 consensus sequence for the Hong Kong strains.

25 And we have observed this in the past,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that when we have a virus that matches, that has an HA  
2 sequence that matches, well with the consensus HA  
3 sequence, antiserum to that virus tends to cover most  
4 of the strains that are circulating quite well.

5 Next, please. I'm just repeating an  
6 overhead that you had seen in January because I think  
7 it's quite interesting and just reminding you is  
8 worthwhile, I think.

9 We have color-coded the isolates as either  
10 Hong Kong/156-like or Hong Kong/483-like. And we see  
11 that we have three isolates from fatal cases in each  
12 group so that there isn't a difference in the severity  
13 of disease caused by these two different antigenic and  
14 genetic variants.

15 Next overhead, please. Sorry. On Page 21  
16 of your handout, there is a dendrogram for the HA  
17 genes of the 16 human isolates that we have now  
18 sequenced. And I somehow didn't get an overhead of  
19 this in my package today. So we'll just look at this.

20 It's not quite as obvious in this  
21 dendrogram as it was on the dendrogram we had  
22 presented earlier, but there are two groups. If you  
23 draw a line right above the Hong Kong/481, this is the  
24 division between the two groups of viruses. And the  
25 antigenic profile of these strains actually matches

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 quite well the genetic differences that we're seeing.

2 We do know that there is one particular  
3 change that appears to be correlated with the  
4 antigenic change we see. And that is a difference in  
5 potential glycosylation site at amino acid 154 to 156  
6 in the HA and viruses with the glycosylation site,  
7 those that match with the antigenic profile of the  
8 Hong Kong/483. So those are the viruses that cover --  
9 antiserum to those viruses cover both groups better.

10 On Page 22, you'll see a dendrogram  
11 showing the evolutionary relationships among the N1  
12 neuraminidase genes of these Hong Kong strains. And  
13 if you look carefully, you'll see that in general the  
14 pattern that's shown for the hemagglutinin gene is  
15 also reflected in the pattern that we see for the  
16 neuraminidase gene. We have I think 14 of the 16  
17 neuraminidase genes sequenced at the present time.

18 So, in summary, in the next overhead, we  
19 can say that all of the viruses that were isolated  
20 from humans in Hong Kong have multiple basic amino  
21 acids at the cleavage site between the HA1 and HA2  
22 domains of the hemagglutinin.

23 And, of course, we know that this feature  
24 is associated with highly pathogenic avian strains.  
25 We also know that these strains are highly pathogenic

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 for chickens.

2 All of the 14 isolates that we have  
3 sequenced the neuraminidase genes for have 19 amino  
4 acid deletion in the stalk region of the  
5 neuraminidase. And we can say that for all of the  
6 isolates that we have examined in detail, they contain  
7 all eight gene segments of avian origin. And there  
8 has not been reassortment between human and avian  
9 strains.

10 Okay. I think I'll just stop very briefly  
11 now and see if there are any questions. If there  
12 aren't, I'll just go on and make a few comments, more  
13 specific comments, about vaccine candidate  
14 development.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Why don't you  
16 proceed, Nancy? And people may think of other things  
17 to ask, then.

18 DR. COX: Okay.

19 UPDATE ON VACCINE DEVELOPMENT

20 DR. COX: I think vaccine candidate  
21 development is just a bit harder to get one's mind  
22 around if you're not thinking about this all of the  
23 time. And so I thought I would show some of the same  
24 overheads that I showed in January.

25 Just to remind you that one of the big

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 issues for us is safety, in working with these  
2 particular strains, we're concerned not only about the  
3 safety of our laboratory personnel but also about the  
4 fear that these viruses might escape and get into the  
5 poultry populations in the United States.

6 USDA regulations require that these  
7 viruses be worked with under P3+ containment, which  
8 means that, in addition to regular P3+ P3 conditions,  
9 you must be able to shower out of the facility.

10 I had mentioned in my presentation that we  
11 had hoped that the Singapore '97 strain would be a  
12 good surrogate apathogenic virus. We have been  
13 looking at that strain. And others have been looking  
14 at other strains to try to find a suitable one.

15 The second approach that we were  
16 considering was to remove the multiple basic amino  
17 acid cleavage site from the hemagglutinin and then  
18 rescue the genetically altered HA gene back into a  
19 suitable background.

20 Unlike other situations where influenza  
21 vaccine candidates are being developed, we realized  
22 early on that it would be necessary to test these  
23 particular H5N1 vaccine candidates for pathogenicity  
24 in chickens, mice, and in ferrets as well before any  
25 human trials could be done.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           And then I just wanted to mention that we  
2 realized that all the normal characteristics that are  
3 required for a good vaccine candidate would be  
4 required for this one. It would have to have proper  
5 growth and processing characteristics for the vaccine  
6 manufacturers.

7           Next, please. I had mentioned that the  
8 duck sampler virus was examined in detail and doesn't  
9 appear to be ideal. It could work in an emergency  
10 situation, but, as we feel we have a bit more  
11 breathing room, we realize that this is not an ideal  
12 candidate. Some additional strains are being  
13 examined. And I think Roland may have a few comments  
14 later on.

15           And then, as I mentioned before, we were  
16 looking at the possibility of obtaining a human-avian  
17 transfectant, which would have the altered HA rescued  
18 into it. And the potential genetic backgrounds that  
19 the H5N1 could reside in were A/PR/8 and A/Ann  
20 Arbor/6/60.

21           We have been pursuing the A/PR/8 approach  
22 in our laboratory. And the folks at Aviron have been  
23 pursuing this avenue. And I'll mention a bit more  
24 about that later.

25           In addition, it would be possible to have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 the modified HA rescued into an avian background. The  
2 researchers at the National Institute for Infectious  
3 Diseases in Japan are pursuing that, as are we. And  
4 this is the background that we are using at CDC.

5 Next, please. Now, there are a variety of  
6 strategies that one can take to alter the virulent  
7 multiple basic amino acid cleavage site that is  
8 associated with virulence.

9 And both at CDC and at Aviron, we have  
10 taken similar approaches to altering that site so that  
11 we will have an avirulent avian sequence or the human  
12 sequence itself.

13 Next, please. And where we are at the  
14 moment is that 7:1 reassortants that have H3N1  
15 antigens have been made for use as helper viruses for  
16 the rescue of the altered HA genes. And these  
17 reassortants have either a human A/PR/8 or Ann Arbor  
18 genetic background. So this step has been reached in  
19 the U.S., the U.K., and Japan.

20 But, even better, now there are 6:2  
21 reassortants available, both in Japan in an avian  
22 background and Aviron has also produced a 6:2  
23 reassortant with the human Ann Arbor 660 cold adapted  
24 background.

25 Now, these strains are being tested for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 pathogenicity. I believe Aviron is testing first in  
2 chickens. And those studies are ongoing now. I'm not  
3 sure of the status of the studies in Japan, but I know  
4 that they are proceeding as quickly as possible.

5 So, as I mentioned, candidates generated  
6 both with the Hong Kong/156 and with Hong Kong/483 are  
7 being tested in animal models. And then work is  
8 continuing in the U.S. and the U.K. to identify  
9 additional surrogate apathogenic strains and to  
10 generate additional transfectant viruses that might be  
11 suitable.

12 Okay.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr. Cox.

14 Are there questions for Nancy? Yes, Dr.  
15 Kilbourne?

16 DISCUSSION

17 DR. KILBOURNE: Nancy, going back a bit,  
18 is this 19 amino acid deletion of neuraminidase, is  
19 that unique to these Hong Kong strains?

20 DR. COX: Yes, as far as we know. Now,  
21 there aren't a lot of neuraminidase sequences in Gen  
22 Bank, but, as far as we have been able to ascertain,  
23 it is unique to these strains.

24 DR. WEBSTER: Let me just add something.  
25 The chicken/Pennsylvania/N2 also had a deletion. And

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 some of the early human PR/8s, late PR/8s, also had  
2 deletion in that site. So they're not unique, but we  
3 see quite a lot of viruses.

4 DR. COX: But this is not the same. It's  
5 not an identical deletion.

6 DR. WEBSTER: No, it's not an identical  
7 deletion.

8 DR. KILBOURNE: No. I'm aware of that,  
9 Rob, but I just wonder whether this unique 19 amino  
10 acid stretch was sort of an identifier for these  
11 strains.

12 DR. WEBSTER: Not just for these strains.

13 DR. KILBOURNE: There are stalk mutants  
14 and deletion mutants.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Snider?

16 DR. SNIDER: Nancy, I wonder if you could  
17 just briefly summarize what's going on with regard to  
18 surveillance for H5N1.

19 DR. COX: There's really quite a bit going  
20 on. In Hong Kong itself, enhanced surveillance has  
21 been in place for some time. And the laboratories  
22 there have really been overwhelmed with the number of  
23 viruses that they have been processing. Of course,  
24 most of them had been H3N2 strains. But their  
25 surveillance is really excellent in Hong Kong itself.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           In addition, efforts have been put in  
2 place to enhance surveillance in Guangdong Province in  
3 China. And we really have not a lot of information  
4 about what's going on currently there, but we do know  
5 that training has occurred, reagents have been  
6 distributed some time ago. And so the labs are fully  
7 capable of identifying H5N1 viruses should they be  
8 isolated.

9           We also know that they have stepped up  
10 surveillance in hospitals. So they're looking for  
11 cases that would be similar to those that had occurred  
12 in Hong Kong.

13           And then what is going on beyond that  
14 varies quite a bit from country to country. There  
15 were some things that were put into place in the U.K.,  
16 for example, that were fairly similar to what was put  
17 in place in the United States, which is enhanced  
18 surveillance in emergency rooms again trying to focus  
19 on patients who were seriously ill with respiratory  
20 disease and from whom it might be most likely to  
21 isolate influenza viruses, particularly if they had  
22 been traveling in Asia recently.

23           So we're trying really to focus the  
24 surveillance as much as possible on those patients who  
25 would be most likely to be infected with the H5N1

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 viruses so as not to overwhelm the laboratory staff at  
2 the state and local levels.

3 I don't know if that tells you enough.

4 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes, Dr. Hall?

5 MEMBER HALL: Can I just say: How about  
6 the surveillance in chickens, too? What does that  
7 consist of at this point?

8 DR. COX: Again, in Hong Kong, we believe  
9 that it's very thorough, particularly for chickens  
10 that are being imported. They're looking very, very  
11 closely at whether the animals have any antibody to  
12 any avian influenza viruses.

13 We don't really know how much surveillance  
14 has been stepped up in Guangdong Province in China,  
15 but they probably have increased surveillance in  
16 birds.

17 In the United States, I really can't say  
18 whether surveillance has been increased. I don't know  
19 if there's someone in the audience. If Rob could make  
20 a comment?

21 DR. WEBSTER: To my knowledge, there has  
22 been no increased surveillance, but there is basic  
23 surveillance still going on.

24 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: At the breeders,  
25 Dr. Webster? Where is the surveillance taking place,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 then?

2 DR. WEBSTER: The surveillance goes on at  
3 the Ames Institute in Ames by Dennis Senney and  
4 others. And there is market surveillance going on in  
5 New York every two or three months. And, to my  
6 knowledge, there's no peptance for H5N1.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That's reassuring.  
8 Everyone is taught all the other dangers of chickens,  
9 which will be eradicated.

10 Other questions for Dr. Cox?

11 (No response.)

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Otherwise, Dr.  
13 Levandowski may want to announce the ongoing aspects  
14 of the program this afternoon.

15 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Okay. Sure. I'd be  
16 happy to do that. Next on the program, continuing  
17 with updates as to activities going on for vaccine  
18 development, Dr. Dominick Iacuzio from NIAID has some  
19 information to present on clinical trials and other  
20 activities.

21 DR. IACUZIO: Thank you for giving me an  
22 opportunity to update you on what I reviewed back in  
23 January. The first few slides actually I will review  
24 a few of the basics of what we were trying to do in  
25 response to at that time back in December and January

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 was what we thought of as sort of an urgent need to do  
2 something with preparing a vaccine.

3 We went ahead and prepared a recombinant  
4 HA, which is a purified recombinant protein. It's a  
5 hemagglutinin monovalent Type A. The HA sequence  
6 genes were cloned from the CDC material. This was  
7 done by Protein Sciences. And this is a recombinant  
8 HA. And it's produced in the baculovirus expression  
9 vector system in the spodofrida Fugiperida insect  
10 cells.

11 Next slide. Just to review, the  
12 recombinant HA protein has a lot of characteristics  
13 which are like the typical HA protein that is isolated  
14 or characterized from the traditionally grown HA.  
15 This, however, is uncleaved. And a lot of the other  
16 characteristics on this slide, Trypsin-resistant,  
17 glutenates, red blood cells, are characteristics  
18 typical of an HA.

19 Next slide, please. Protein Sciences  
20 prepared a vaccine for clinical use and this through  
21 a contract with NIAID. And the material is sterile  
22 for injection through the IM route. This particular  
23 material was at a ten-microgram per half a mil dose in  
24 single-dose vials.

25 And we had some preclinical challenge data

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 that was conducted by Mike Purdue at the USDA. And I  
2 believe he presented some data at the last January  
3 Council meeting.

4 We are continuing in this Phase I  
5 multi-center trial. And, just to review, it's ten  
6 micrograms per half a mil dose. There were two doses  
7 at a three-week interval. Again, this is a  
8 compromise, but we wanted to move quickly.

9 The subjects are adults or laboratory  
10 workers who are at increased risk since they are  
11 busily preparing or trying to prepare recombinant  
12 candidates for the traditional vaccine.

13 Primary endpoints here, we thought we  
14 would have the opportunity to collect safety and  
15 immunogenicity data on this recombinant H5. And we  
16 have right now seven sites lined up. Two  
17 international sites have contacted us. There are one  
18 or two that were interested, but I could talk more  
19 about that later.

20 Next slide. In the chronology of events,  
21 we are moving quickly here of when the first case was  
22 isolated and when I guess there is more of an intense  
23 need to move ahead.

24 The response of preparing the  
25 reagent-grade HA, the vaccine was prepared in January

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 when I talked last. And since that time, we have had  
2 an NIH IRB approval of the protocol.

3 In February, the first laboratory, five  
4 laboratory workers were immunized with the recombinant  
5 HA vaccine. And since that time, actually, in March,  
6 additional laboratory workers have been immunized. I  
7 have some more specifics about that in the additional  
8 slides.

9 The national time frame, just to give you  
10 an idea of how quickly things did move, the protocol  
11 was prepared for the IRB in January. I think we are  
12 now even better prepared if we had to go through this  
13 again.

14 FDA approval moved rapidly also in  
15 allowing us to proceed with the clinical study in  
16 February. The first laboratory workers, like I said,  
17 were actually immunized February 23rd.

18 Additional immunizations occurred on March  
19 9th. The second site started vaccinating, actually,  
20 about a week ago. And Dose 2 was administered to the  
21 first five subjects last week. And additional sites,  
22 there are five domestic and international sites. But  
23 there have been several delays.

24 Next slide. We are learning through this  
25 experience to be better prepared in case we really

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 have to respond with the next in case of a pandemic.  
2 The actual numbers here are for Dose 1, we have 13  
3 immunized just at the NIH Clinical Center. Dose 2,  
4 like I say, five were immunized last week.

5 The other site that is ongoing or up and  
6 running, I should say, is the St. Jude's site. In  
7 talking to my colleagues, another eight additional  
8 laboratory workers will be immunized this week, I  
9 believe.

10 We have run into some delays with the  
11 other U.S. sites. That includes CDC; the USDA, both  
12 Athens, Georgia and Ames, Iowa; additional workers at  
13 Protein Sciences who are going to be immunized through  
14 this GCRC at the University of Connecticut; and also  
15 laboratory workers at New York Medical College who are  
16 preparing high-growth reassortants.

17 Some of the delays that we have run into  
18 in trying to facilitate this whole process were  
19 identifying a principal investigator in a clinical  
20 site at a typical site that does research work.  
21 Sometimes that wasn't logistically easy.

22 We did do this for the FDA, for example,  
23 by using the NIH Clinical Center. And in the case of  
24 the University of Connecticut, the GCRC will work.

25 We have had problems with health clinics

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 at various agencies because recently a lot of these  
2 agencies have contracts with the health clinic. And  
3 to administer an experimental vaccine is problematic.  
4 We have run into hurdles where we didn't expect these.  
5 Local IRBs to review have at times been maybe  
6 unresponsive to what we thought was an urgent need,  
7 period.

8 The single products assurances have also  
9 induced delays. These are needed for NIH-sponsored  
10 studies, IRB approval of protocols and consents, of  
11 course, there's always a time lag.

12 And, like I said, there are liabilities  
13 for contract health clinics which are at these  
14 particular agencies. And the "i" word keeps coming  
15 up, the indemnification. Those involved with pandemic  
16 planning have been very much aware in the past, and  
17 also currently the indemnification is a real issue.

18 Next slide, please. We recognize that  
19 there are other H5N1 vaccine approaches. We would  
20 like to participate in a license-inactivated vaccine.  
21 There have been ongoing discussions. Maybe Roland  
22 might be able to talk a little bit about that.

23 There needs first to get the pilot lot  
24 production of a candidate. And, of course, we would  
25 be interested in a Phase I type of safety

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 immunogenicity study.

2 As Nancy mentioned, there are various or  
3 there are other approaches, not only the inactivated  
4 license vaccine, but Aviron has successfully made an  
5 Ann Arbor backbone of the cold adapted vaccine with  
6 the H5N1. And your exploring the possibilities or the  
7 concerns that would need to proceed to both prepare a  
8 pilot lot and to do safety testing.

9 In the meeting last week with a group in  
10 D.C. on vaccines, we came across the safety and  
11 containment issues for conducting a study like this.

12 I think that's it.

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Dr.  
14 Iacuzio.

15 Questions from the panel? Dr. Greenberg?

16 MEMBER GREENBERG: This is just for my own  
17 benefit. Baclovirus-expressed hemagglutinin for  
18 traditional hemagglutinins is a reasonable vaccine?  
19 I just don't know the --

20 DR. IACUZIO: We have in the past  
21 conducted -- I believe I had a slide, actually, for  
22 about seven studies or small studies of other  
23 recombinant HA. And we have shown in these studies --  
24 and a few of these studies have been published -- to  
25 be safe and immunogenic.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1                   In one study, -- it's a very small study  
2                   -- there has been a hint of some type of efficacy.  
3                   But it wasn't designed or powered to be an efficacy  
4                   study.

5                   CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:   Do you have an  
6                   immunologic data on your vaccinees?

7                   DR. IACUZIO:   Not yet.   According to the  
8                   protocol, we plan to do the first bleed after the  
9                   second dose two weeks post-dose.   So that will be an  
10                  additional week.   And then we would do that first  
11                  subset of subjects and to do exactly that.

12                  We plan to do both the virus  
13                  neutralization assays at CDC.   Nancy Cox offered three  
14                  times to do these additional assays for us together  
15                  with a few other assays.

16                  CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:   We're fine here at  
17                  the table.   Anyone else who would like to pursue  
18                  further discussion on the vaccine or we will have Dr.  
19                  Levandowski continue on, then, with his part of the  
20                  program?

21                  (No response.)

22                  CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI:   I think we should  
23                  proceed, then, Ron.

24                  DR. LEVANDOWSKI:   Okay.   Thank you.   I  
25                  just have a few brief comments on activities that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 haven't been touched on before, both here at FDA and  
2 at other institutions.

3 Of course, our efforts are predominantly  
4 directed toward trying to support the inactivated  
5 influenza vaccines, which are the ones that are  
6 licensed now and the ones that we would have to rely  
7 on in the event of a pandemic for the widespread use.  
8 So I think it is natural that we would be  
9 concentrating in that area.

10 As you have heard, there are vaccine  
11 strains and reagents that are being produced in many  
12 places. And we haven't emphasized it. And I guess,  
13 even as I'm saying this, I'm not sure now because I  
14 think Nancy would have said something if it were so.  
15 But my understanding was that work is going on in  
16 Australia as well for some of this. No? Okay. I'd  
17 better not say much more than that.

18 But there are quite a few different  
19 centers that are involved. And the first thing I  
20 guess that I could comment on that we've done that we  
21 have something very positive on is the production of  
22 a sheep antiserum that can be used for standardizing  
23 vaccines.

24 As Dominick mentioned, from the Hong  
25 Kong/156/97 prototype strain, Protein Sciences has the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 baclovirus-produced recombinant hemagglutinin. That  
2 was made available to us and also to the National  
3 Institute of Biological Standards and Control in the  
4 United Kingdom.

5 Both of us have now produced a sheep  
6 antiserum which could be used as a preliminary reagent  
7 for standardization of vaccines. This material we  
8 have in fairly good quantity. And it can also be made  
9 available for research purposes, for other types of  
10 purposes that might require a specific antiserum.

11 These antisera are particularly useful  
12 because the sheep, for some reason, does make a very  
13 clean antibody. And we would be happy to make that  
14 available.

15 In saying that we have this reagent, it's  
16 not the only reagent that we're likely to need. It's  
17 a reagent and not the reagent because, as Nancy was  
18 pointing out, there may be differences between  
19 strands.

20 So the specific reagent that we would want  
21 to have for experimental vaccines might be somewhat  
22 different or it might be a different hemagglutinin and  
23 that we need to use immediately, but, as with  
24 statements that we make every year about the utility  
25 of antisera that were not produced specifically for a

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 strand, these could be used as an interim reagent,  
2 even for strains that are not directly related.

3 We and others have received permits now to  
4 start and funding, I would say gratefully, to start  
5 work on some of the nonpathogenic strains. And a  
6 number of us have been working with the duck/Singapore  
7 strain, which Nancy also talked about at some length.

8 As she pointed out, it may again not be  
9 the ideal strain for work, but it is a strain for us  
10 to begin to get some experience with making  
11 reassortants. And we think that there could be other  
12 kinds of useful information we get out of that,  
13 whether that particular strain gets used for  
14 production or not.

15 I should mention that John Wood's lab at  
16 National Institute of Biological Standards and Control  
17 has been working with the duck/Singapore strain and  
18 has some experience with that.

19 And also Dr. Kilbourne's laboratory has  
20 begun some work. He may want to have some comments of  
21 his own in regard to production of some high-growth  
22 reassortants.

23 Our particular plans for the  
24 duck/Singapore strain are to just do some very basic  
25 reassorting to begin with. And we plan to make an H5

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 avian N1 PR/8 reassortant and also an H5 avian N2  
2 Johannesburg neuraminidase reassortant as our first  
3 approximation. And we have some rationale for wanting  
4 to do that. And I would like to be a little bit  
5 provocative to the Committee and ask for some  
6 discussion on this point perhaps.

7 We have found in our laboratory in the  
8 past that strains that have the PR/8 neuraminidase  
9 tend to be among the best-growing viruses that we see.  
10 We don't use those for reassortant viruses for  
11 production today because we like to have the  
12 neuraminidase as close as possible.

13 But inactivated influenza vaccines are  
14 immunogenic and protective predominantly on the basis  
15 of their hemagglutinin, which is what we standardize  
16 the vaccines for. And I would ask if maybe either  
17 there would be some discussion about how it would be  
18 perceived if there were a vaccine that were made with  
19 the wrong neuraminidase; that is, a neuraminidase that  
20 wasn't the one from the prototype strain,  
21 understanding that if we use such a strain, it might  
22 permit larger-scale production of inactivated  
23 vaccines. It would be a trade-off between quantity  
24 versus quality in this sense.

25 There are some additional strains that we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 have learned about. Nancy Cox alluded to that also.  
2 There has been an outbreak of an H5, pathogenic H5,  
3 infection in chickens in Italy, in poultry in Italy.  
4 And Dr. Webster may know some more about this as well.

5 Those strains, I guess serendipitously  
6 there was a strain that was isolated that's an H5  
7 which is not among the pathogenic strains. This  
8 strain was isolated sometime earlier this year, I  
9 think January or February. And it's been sent to  
10 Waybridge, where it's being looked over now. And it  
11 is another strain which potentially could be useful as  
12 a surrogate strain for production of high-growth  
13 reassortants.

14 I don't know how closely related it is to  
15 the Italian pathogenic strain. And maybe Nancy Cox  
16 would have to confirm this, but my understanding of  
17 the pathogenic strain is that it's in the Eurasian  
18 lineage and it is antigenically quite similar to the  
19 Hong Kong strain.

20 Would you want to comment on that right  
21 now?

22 DR. COX: I don't know anything about its  
23 antigenic properties, but genetically it's closely  
24 related.

25 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Okay. So genetically it

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 looks similar. Thank you.

2           Whatever we do, we're not sure how any of  
3 these strains are going to behave in manufacturing  
4 because it's not something that we've had experience  
5 with previously. And, as has been expressed, there  
6 are concerns about protection of the environment, both  
7 for us and for the manufacturers.

8           We have been looking into ways that we can  
9 collaborate with our colleagues at the Department of  
10 Defense. And I don't believe there's anybody  
11 representing DOD here in the audience to comment on  
12 what I'm about to say. But we have been in  
13 discussions with them as to a role that they could  
14 play in terms of producing experimental vaccine  
15 batches.

16           They have facilities where it may be  
17 possible for a somewhat higher level of containment  
18 for making vaccine than our regular manufacturers and  
19 could perhaps help us to get some early information  
20 about the strains that have already been discussed  
21 that are already in the pipeline.

22           And along those same lines, as a form of  
23 reassurance -- and maybe this is something else I  
24 would like to hear some discussion from the Committee  
25 on.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 In terms of the strains themselves, as  
2 we're concerned about safety for the environment, of  
3 course, the initial studies would be to look in  
4 animals to see virulence properties. And I don't know  
5 whether we can do transmissibility but perhaps that.

6 But we have some ongoing discussions again  
7 with the Department of Defense about the potential for  
8 some studies in people to try to answer some questions  
9 about virulence and transmissibility of these strains  
10 that we anticipate may be used in real life for  
11 producing vaccines.

12 And I think I'll stop there and ask for  
13 some discussion.

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Roland.

15 You've heard Dr. Levandowski's comments  
16 and some of the questions he's posed for us. Would  
17 anyone like to address at least the first one on how  
18 you would perceive a vaccine that would have a  
19 different neuraminidase in it? Dr. Greenberg?

20 MEMBER GREENBERG: Can I get a  
21 clarification of how advantageous the PR/8  
22 neuraminidase would be? Are you talking logs  
23 different? I thought that because if it's not  
24 substantially advantageous, I would assume that most  
25 people would want to have the homologous neuraminidase

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 candidate for what would be perceived as a totally new  
2 pandemic strain.

3 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Okay. In terms of how  
4 much better than a reassortant that had the correct  
5 neuraminidase, generally the highest-yielding strains  
6 we see are always those that have PR/8 neuraminidase  
7 in our reassorting process. And we sometimes select  
8 against those.

9 They're not always that much higher.  
10 They're maybe twofold higher, but sometimes it's more  
11 than that. It may be fourfold or higher than that.

12 MEMBER GREENBERG: Is that a limitation  
13 for production? I mean, you don't normally need that  
14 for production; right? I mean, you always have the  
15 right neuraminidase traditionally with inactivated  
16 vaccines.

17 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Yes. We have  
18 traditionally aimed to have the right neuraminidase  
19 because, in spite of not standardizing the vaccine for  
20 neuraminidase, the expectation is that neuraminidase  
21 might add something to the protection of the vaccine.  
22 But, again, we don't standardize for that. We don't  
23 always measure antibodies against neuraminidase.

24 In terms of the production, when we say a  
25 strain is two or fourfold higher by hemagglutination,

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 for the manufacturers, it doesn't always end up being  
2 two to fourfold higher in terms of their recovery of  
3 hemagglutinin for the vaccine at the end. There are  
4 steps in the process that have an effect on whatever  
5 their starting mass of hemagglutinin might be.

6 DR. SNIDER: I was going to ask: I mean,  
7 since we seem to have plateaued off at somewhere  
8 around 80 million doses, would this make a difference  
9 in the bottom line or would there have to be other  
10 changes made in the production process in order to get  
11 substantially more doses? Because here we're talking  
12 about trying to cover the entire population. And how  
13 far would that get us, could you guess?

14 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Kilbourne?

15 DR. SNIDER: Do you have an idea or do any  
16 of the manufacturers have an idea?

17 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: You know, I think that's  
18 unknown. I don't really think I can answer directly.  
19 Would it, in reality, add something to the overall  
20 production of vaccine?

21 I can't say yes or no. I think we would  
22 have to see. It would have to be something that  
23 probably needs to be studied and some way to  
24 understand whether that would be beneficial or not.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Dr. Kilbourne, then Dr. Estes.

2 DR. KILBOURNE: Yes. A couple of things.

3 As a lifelong proponent of neuraminidase, I would hate  
4 to see this happen, although I would accept Ronald's  
5 statement that probably the primary immunogen in our  
6 conventional vaccination procedure is the  
7 hemagglutinin.

8 I also disagree with his fundamental  
9 premise here. And I don't think we have sufficient  
10 systematic observations on reassortants to be able to  
11 make the statement that the addition of the N1  
12 neuraminidase is necessarily equatable with high  
13 yield.

14 As a matter of fact, you can't do any  
15 better than X-31, which is a 6:2. And, even though we  
16 have a 7:1 reassortant in the lab to compare it with.  
17 It's no better.

18 I think that the question might be held in  
19 reserve for specific instances, but in general I  
20 couldn't quite go along with that.

21 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Dr. Estes?

22 MEMBER ESTES: Well, I had the question  
23 about what studies have really been done looking at  
24 the effect of a heterologous neuraminidase. And if we  
25 don't have good data, maybe that's something that

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 someone should do those studies.

2 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any response to  
3 that, Dr. Webster?

4 DR. WEBSTER: No. I wasn't going to  
5 respond to it.

6 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Well, I think  
7 that's a reasonable suggestion. And maybe Dr.  
8 Levandowski would like to respond to that or Dr.  
9 Iacuzio, one of you.

10 DR. KILBOURNE: I'd just like to add  
11 specifically in this instance, Ronald's position may  
12 be quite defensible because I don't think we yet know  
13 what the antigenic relationship of the PR/8 N1 is to  
14 the Hong Kong H5N1. And there may be sufficient  
15 heterovariant cross-immunity there. So it would not  
16 be a simple matter of just giving the HI antigen. I  
17 think there are all things that had to be explored in  
18 much more detail.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: That sounds  
20 reasonable. Do you have any reasonable, Ronald or Dr.  
21 Iacuzio?

22 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: No. My response is that  
23 this is the sort of discussion I was hoping we would  
24 have.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Terrific. Okay.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Dr. Webster?

2 DR. WEBSTER: I think in principle in the  
3 face of a pandemic, that a vaccine that is not matched  
4 in the neuraminidase would be acceptable in an  
5 emergency situation. But when there's time, we should  
6 match the neuraminidase.

7 And at the moment, there isn't time to  
8 look at the other NIs that are available and avian  
9 species out there and make a double reassortant, put  
10 on one of the best matching avian neuraminidases.  
11 There are viruses N1 neuraminidases from swine from  
12 Europe and Asia that match quite well with this Hong  
13 Kong.

14 So I would, in essence, agree in an  
15 emergency situation use just the hemagglutinin.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any other points?  
17 Any other further thoughts on the Committee's part  
18 regarding studies in people, transmission among  
19 people, in safety strains in the environment?

20 DR. WEBSTER: The other question that  
21 Roland raised was the wisdom of having a PR/8 donor  
22 for the high growth or an avian donor for the high  
23 growth, what is preferential.

24 I think we have to keep in mind that we  
25 have to be careful if we're putting a human genome

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 into an avian code. And we have to be careful with  
2 this, especially if we think using it as a live  
3 vaccine, even during production. This raises  
4 potential problems.

5 DR. KILBOURNE: Well, I would maintain  
6 PR/8 is no longer a human virus, as Bayer showed in  
7 his human volunteer experiments. I think we can be a  
8 little bit reassured by that. I'd be more concerned  
9 with perhaps putting this in the form of a live virus  
10 vaccine of any sort.

11 DR. WEBSTER: That's my main concern.

12 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Other ideas or  
13 thoughts around the table? Are there any other issues  
14 that the three of you, Roland, wish to bring up that  
15 might help you as you move forward? Nancy Cox?

16 DR. COX: Just one question. I would like  
17 to get the opinion of the Committee on using this N1  
18 which has the 19 amino acid deletion in it, in the  
19 reassortants. Are there concerns about using that  
20 particular neuraminidase to produce a vaccine  
21 candidate?

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Very good question.  
23 Well, we have two experts here at the table. Dr.  
24 Webster?

25 DR. WEBSTER: There is some evidence from

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 Dr. Ayers' work years ago of the so-called stubbing  
2 neuraminidases being slightly less immunogenic than  
3 the more recent work of Dr. Cojuoca and Pelesi and  
4 others for very short neuraminidase stalks influencing  
5 both the immunogenicity and the viruses.

6 So it is something that has to be taken  
7 into account. In emergency situation, use it, but if  
8 it's possible, find one with a long stalk.

9 DR. KILBOURNE: I think most of the  
10 evidence would indicate that I know about that whether  
11 it's a short or long stalk doesn't make much  
12 difference in terms of antigenicity or immunogenicity.  
13 It makes a great deal of difference perhaps in terms  
14 of viral function, but I think you could expect good  
15 antigenicity from such a virus.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: These are highly  
17 complex issues. And there may be representatives from  
18 news agencies, the media here. And we're talking  
19 about great potential differences in the structure of  
20 these viruses or antigenicity, immunogenicity,  
21 genetics.

22 If you can't have an answer to your  
23 question from what you have heard, then I suggest you  
24 not call me, as you may be prone to do, but to call  
25 the agency in order to feel that you are receiving the

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 absolutely recorded answers here that are in the  
2 public domain.

3 What is your number, Roland?

4 (Laughter.)

5 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: I'm in the book, at  
6 least for at work.

7 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: I always say, "Call  
8 CBER." And people say, "Spell that for me."

9 Are there other issues that anyone would  
10 like to bring up? We have the time to do it and the  
11 leisure today that we didn't have this morning. Dr.  
12 Snider?

13 DR. SNIDER: I'd just like to just a  
14 little bit more about the issue of the human  
15 transmission studies and under what circumstance you  
16 think or you were suggesting they might be important  
17 to do. I think you raised that, Roland, earlier.

18 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Yes. Well, we have had  
19 feedback about concerns about manufacturing, in  
20 particular. Just as we're concerned about the  
21 laboratory workers who are getting these experimental  
22 vaccines, the manufacturers, too, have real concerns  
23 about their manufacturing workers.

24 I guess whatever can be done to try to get  
25 some reassurance that strains that we're making, which

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 whatever background they're on are not likely to be  
2 virulent or easily transmissible in people would be  
3 very useful or if it turns out that they are, to know  
4 that in advance so that measures could be taken to try  
5 to deal with that.

6 DR. SNIDER: So this primarily has to do  
7 with the safety of the laboratory workers who are  
8 working with the candidate vaccines?

9 DR. LEVANDOWSKI: Predominantly it would  
10 be protection of the environment, yes.

11 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Any other thoughts?

12 (No response.)

13 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Then I suggest we  
14 bring this session to a close. And I'll turn this  
15 over to Mrs. Cherry now.

16 OPEN PUBLIC HEARING

17 EXECUTIVE SECRETARY CHERRY: At this time  
18 we put additional time on the agenda for anyone who  
19 wishes to make a statement during an open public  
20 hearing session.

21 I've not been notified of anyone who  
22 wishes to speak, but this is your opportunity. Going?  
23 Going?

24 (No response.)

25 EXECUTIVE SECRETARY CHERRY: I guess

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 there's no one who wishes to speak, then. We'll call  
2 the open public hearing session closed for the day.

3 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Nancy.

4 We're not going to take a break now.  
5 We'll move on to Session 4, which is an open session  
6 on the Laboratory of DNA Viruses and Laboratory of  
7 Hepatitis Viruses. And an overview of the laboratory  
8 will be presented by Dr. Peter Patriarca from FDA.

9 DR. PATRIARCA: All right. One second.

10 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: No. Take your  
11 time.

12 (Pause.)

13 SESSION 4 - OPEN SESSION

14 LABORATORY OF DNA VIRUSES AND

15 LABORATORY OF HEPATITIS VIRUSES

16 OVERVIEW OF THE LABORATORIES

17 DR. PATRIARCA: I'm going to take about  
18 five minutes this afternoon to actually give a preview  
19 of what will be discussed later this afternoon. This  
20 presentation will be in two parts. I'll handle the  
21 first part for our products. And then Carl Frasch  
22 will follow me talking about bacterial products.

23 Just very briefly, what I'd like to do  
24 very quickly is give you an overview of our division,  
25 Division of Viral Products, which is responsible for

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 the regulation, review, and research related to viral  
2 vaccines and related products.

3 Our division at the present time is  
4 divided up into five laboratories, which are shown  
5 here. Two of these laboratories, namely the  
6 Laboratory of Hepatitis Viruses, headed by Dr. Steve  
7 Feinstone; and the Laboratory of DNA Viruses, headed  
8 by Dr. Andrew Lewis, were recently reviewed in  
9 December. And you will hear more about that a little  
10 bit later this afternoon.

11 What I have depicted here are the main  
12 disease areas that these laboratories are primarily  
13 interested in. But, again, I'll focus my comments  
14 very briefly on these two laboratories.

15 Beginning with the Laboratory of DNA  
16 Viruses, this laboratory has two main functions. The  
17 first is the review and evaluation of DNA virus  
18 vaccines and related products; secondly, recombinant  
19 gene delivery systems; and, finally, cell substrates  
20 and adventitious agent issues. This laboratory also,  
21 as you will hear, conducts research related to the  
22 regulation and use of DNA virus bioproducts.

23 Now, an important component of this  
24 laboratory is the Unit on Gene Expression headed by  
25 Dr. Jerry Weir. Jerry is in the audience. And if I

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 could just ask him to stand up now so that everyone  
2 could see him? Jerry was one of the people who was  
3 reviewed in December.

4 Jerry's research activities focus on three  
5 primary areas: first, to determine the cis-acting DNA  
6 elements regulating the expression of herpes simplex  
7 virus genes; secondly, to investigate the regulation  
8 of foreign gene expression and HSV vectors designed  
9 for gene therapy; and, then, finally, to evaluate the  
10 feasibility of DNA vaccination as a strategy for HSV  
11 vaccine development and at the same time to identify  
12 critical antigens that might be included in subunit  
13 vaccines.

14 Now, another important component of the  
15 laboratory is the Unit on Poxvirus Biology headed by  
16 Dr. Mike Merchlinsky. Mike is also here. And if I  
17 could ask him to stand up so that everyone can see  
18 him?

19 Mike's research program focuses in on two  
20 primary areas. The first involves the development and  
21 evaluation of vectors for the generation of poxvirus  
22 recombinants. And I would mention that Mike and his  
23 coworkers have pioneered a very extraordinary and  
24 innovative method that you'll hear about a little bit  
25 later on this afternoon.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1           And then, secondly, Mike and his  
2 colleagues identify and characterize viral genes that  
3 participate in the resolution of intermediates of  
4 viral DNA replication. This also is a very  
5 complicated process and line of investigation that  
6 you'll hear more about later this afternoon.

7           Now, the other laboratory in my division  
8 that was reviewed in December was the Laboratory of  
9 Hepatitis Viruses, which has three primary functions.  
10 First, the laboratory reviews, evaluates, and  
11 regulates hepatitis A and B vaccines, other hepatitis  
12 vaccines, and other related biologic products.

13           Secondly and perhaps equally importantly,  
14 the laboratory provides expert consultation to other  
15 CBER offices and especially the Office of Blood on  
16 hepatitis therapeutics and blood safety issues.

17           And, then, finally, the laboratory also  
18 conducts research related to the immunology, molecular  
19 biology, and pathogenesis of hepatitis A and C  
20 viruses.

21           Now, the person whose laboratory was  
22 reviewed in December is Gerardo Kaplan, who I don't  
23 think could be here today because of a conflict. No.  
24 I don't see him.

25           Gerardo's work has focused on four areas:

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1 first, to identify non-primate cells that support the  
2 replication of HAV; secondly, to identify and  
3 characterize the cellular receptor for HAV. And this  
4 actually is something that he was actually able to do.  
5 It's an extremely important breakthrough that you'll  
6 hear more about this afternoon.

7 Thirdly, he's working on identifying  
8 internal factors required for HAV replication or  
9 blocking of that replication. This is very important  
10 in vaccine development and also for the creation of  
11 various diagnostics for HAV.

12 And, then, finally, he's developed a  
13 program looking at various small animal models to  
14 study HAV replication and pathogenesis.

15 So that's all I have this afternoon in the  
16 way of an overview. You'll hear more details later on  
17 this afternoon. And if there are no questions, we can  
18 proceed to Dr. Frasch.

19 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Are there any  
20 questions? Are there any questions for Dr. Patriarca?

21 (No response.)

22 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: You can continue to  
23 speak if you wish, but what we're trying to accomplish  
24 is that before Dr. Frasch presents, that we're getting  
25 Dr. Apicella on the line. He was on my site visit

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 team when we did the visit.

2 (Pause.)

3 EXECUTIVE SECRETARY CHERRY: Hi, Dr.  
4 Apicella. This is Nancy. We're just ready to start.  
5 Dr. Frasch is going to give his little overview of the  
6 lab in open session.

7 DR. APICELLA: Okay.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Hello, Mike. This  
9 is Pat Ferrieri. Thank you so much for being able to  
10 join us today. We'll now do the overview of the  
11 Laboratory of Bacterial Polysaccharides by Dr. Carl  
12 Frasch. Again, this is open session.

13 You can hear us, Mike?

14 DR. APICELLA: Yes, I can hear you fine.

15 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

16 SESSION 5 - OPEN SESSION

17 LABORATORY OF BACTERIAL POLYSACCHARIDES

18 OVERVIEW OF THE LIBRARY

19 DR. FRASCH: Okay. First of all, I'm  
20 going to tell you that this will be one of the  
21 laboratories within the Division of Bacterial  
22 Products. The Division of Bacterial Products, as the  
23 name denotes, deals with all bacterial-related  
24 vaccines, such as DTP, the toxoid vaccines, and then  
25 also the polysaccharide vaccines. So my laboratory

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 obviously has all the polysaccharide vaccines.

2 I'd like to start off to tell you that  
3 together encapsulated bacterial pathogens are a  
4 leading cause of morbidity and mortality in both  
5 pediatric and elderly populations. Therefore, the  
6 scope of studies within the Laboratory of Bacterial  
7 Polysaccharides encompasses all non-enteric  
8 encapsulated bacterial pathogens. And this is  
9 reflected by the organization within the laboratory.

10 We have four different sections within the  
11 laboratory. The first section is headed by Dr.  
12 Margaret Bash. And that section is Molecular  
13 Epidemiology and Vaccine Section. She has --

14 DR. APICELLA: Excuse me. This is Dr.  
15 Apicella.

16 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Yes?

17 DR. APICELLA: I can hardly hear Carl.  
18 Maybe he can speak a little louder or get the mike  
19 closer.

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We have a  
21 microphone right over this gizmo here that is  
22 permitting us to hear you, but we'll try to do better.  
23 You can hear me fine?

24 DR. APICELLA: I can hear you fine.

25 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Carl, we might have

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 to have you present from the table perhaps. If you  
2 come, Carl, and sit here where Nancy had been sitting  
3 and use her microphone, I think then Dr. Apicella can  
4 hear you.

5 DR. FRASCH: Mike?

6 DR. APICELLA: Yes?

7 DR. FRASCH: This is Carl.

8 DR. APICELLA: Yes, Carl. I can hear you  
9 now.

10 DR. FRASCH: Great. All right. I'm  
11 sitting at the table, rather than the podium.

12 DR. APICELLA: Okay.

13 DR. FRASCH: All right. So basically the  
14 Laboratory of Bacterial Polysaccharides has four  
15 sections due to the breadth of the kinds of studies  
16 that we're involved in.

17 The first section is headed by Dr.  
18 Margaret Bash. And she has now a staff fellow, a  
19 pediatric intern, and a technician working with her on  
20 meningococcal and now a gonococcal-related project due  
21 to a grant from Women's Health.

22 The second section is the  
23 Lipopolysaccharide Section headed by Dr. Chao-Ming  
24 Tsai concerning principally meningococcal  
25 lipopolysaccharides but also other

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 lipopolysaccharides. And I'll get into some of the  
2 studies that he has done in a moment.

3 The next section is the Pneumococcal  
4 Vaccine Section headed by Dr. Chi-Jen Lee. He has a  
5 visiting scientist with him and a technician. He is  
6 studying pneumococcal conjugate vaccines and  
7 pneumococcal conjugate vaccines as they relate to  
8 maternal immunization.

9 The last section of our laboratory is  
10 headed by myself. And we're interested in looking at  
11 the immune response to different bacterial  
12 polysaccharide vaccines. These involve immune  
13 response to meningococcal polysaccharides,  
14 pneumococcal polysaccharides, *H. flu* polysaccharides,  
15 and now more recently the Group G streptococcal, or  
16 GBS, polysaccharides.

17 So there are two ORISE fellows working  
18 with me and a technician on these studies. And these  
19 studies involve also distribution of U.S. reference  
20 materials for *Haemophilus* and *Pneumococcus*.

21 Let me show up a few slides very briefly  
22 highlighting some of the accomplishments of the  
23 laboratory. Okay. The first is we work on a better  
24 understanding of the protective immunity to  
25 encapsulate pathogens. We're working on --

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We're just  
2 rearranging some seating here, Mike, so Carl can see  
3 the screen.

4 DR. FRASCH: I have to see the screen and  
5 talk, too.

6 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Can you hear him now?

7 DR. APICELLA: Yes, yes.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you.

9 DR. FRASCH: Sorry for the confusion.

10 So, anyway, we're working on a better  
11 understanding of protective immunity encapsulated  
12 pathogens. We're working on improved Group B  
13 meningococcal vaccines. This is a study we're doing  
14 in collaboration with some laboratories in Brazil.

15 We're working on pneumolysin as a protein  
16 carrier for more broadly specific pneumococcal  
17 vaccines. We're concerned that the present conjugate  
18 vaccines may need to provide somewhat broader  
19 protection. So we think if we use a common  
20 pneumococcal antigen, then we may be able to increase  
21 the specificity.

22 Then we're working on immuno assay  
23 development and standardization for comparative  
24 devaluation of conjugate vaccines. As I mentioned, we  
25 helped develop the standard *Haemophilus* assay. And we

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 distribute a reference serum throughout the world for  
2 *Haemophilus*.

3 We have done similarly for several of the  
4 pneumococcal types. And we distribute a reference  
5 serum internationally for measuring pneumococcal  
6 antibodies. This is particularly important now that  
7 there are several efficacy trials going on for  
8 pneumococcal conjugate vaccines.

9 Not on this slide is our work, more recent  
10 work, with the Group B streptococcal assay  
11 standardization. And we'll actually be presenting,  
12 having a workshop on some of our results in about two  
13 months.

14 Okay. Other people in our laboratory are  
15 working on improved identification of meningococcal  
16 disease. We have developed a number of PCR probes for  
17 identification of meningococcal meningitis using from  
18 either the blood or the CSF.

19 This has become important because we're  
20 collaborating with the Government of New Zealand  
21 because they're having an epidemic of Group B  
22 meningococcal disease. And we hope to help them when  
23 they apply a vaccine to try to prevent a disease.

24 We're working on studies for prevention of  
25 gram-negative septic shock. And we're trying to

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 understand better the *in vivo* biological activities of  
2 meningococcal LOS. And we have been trying to work on  
3 some anti-endotoxin peptides.

4 Another area is we're working on better  
5 methods for control of licensed vaccines. For  
6 example, Dr. Tsai in our group has developed a highly  
7 sensitive and specific quantitation method for  
8 *Haemophilus* polysaccharide in combination vaccines  
9 using a Dionex HPLC method.

10 This is particularly important with the  
11 combination vaccines that may contain whole cell  
12 pertussis and other components which essentially  
13 prevent the chemical identification of the *Haemophilus*  
14 polysaccharide, but Dr. Tsai has developed a method  
15 where one looks at the unique *Haemophilus* subunit and  
16 can quantitate that polysaccharide in all vaccines  
17 that we have looked at.

18 We are now extending these studies to try  
19 to look at some of the meningococcal Group A and Group  
20 C, see if we can apply the same method for that  
21 because these polysaccharides are only in clinical  
22 studies and may end up being in combination vaccines.

23 And, lastly, we're working on new methods  
24 for construction of lipopolysaccharide-based conjugate  
25 vaccines.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701



1           Okay. This slide is to illustrate that  
2 members of our laboratory have international  
3 recognition or at least recognition outside of FDA  
4 because our members participate with ad hoc reviews  
5 for NIH; CDC; MRC; Canada, for example; American  
6 Cancer Society.

7           We have worked with the WHO to draft  
8 requirements for *Haemophilus* conjugate vaccines, Vi  
9 polysaccharide vaccines. We have been consultants to  
10 CDC, PAHO, WHO. And some of our people have been  
11 scientific advisers to the Japanese and Taiwan  
12 governments. So the last slide simply shows some of  
13 the things, in conclusion, where we think our  
14 laboratory has had an impact on CBER research and  
15 medical science in general.

16           We have identified new conjugate vaccine  
17 antigens. We have improved case identification for  
18 clinical trials of meningococcal vaccines, developed  
19 better methods for characterization of the Hib  
20 conjugate vaccines -- and, as I say, we're trying to  
21 extend those to other conjugate vaccines -- develop  
22 standardized methods for measurement of  
23 anti-polysaccharide antibodies to *Pneumococcus*,  
24 *Meningococcus*, Group B strep, and so on.

25           Thank you.

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701

1 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: Thank you, Carl.

2 Are there questions for Dr. Frasch in the  
3 Lab of Bacterial Polysaccharides? Last chance.

4 It looks like there are no questions,  
5 Carl. Thank you so much.

6 EXECUTIVE SECRETARY CHERRY: We have to  
7 take a break now.

8 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: We have to take a  
9 break now so that we will clear the room of those who  
10 are not validated by the FDA leadership. Dr. Goldberg  
11 is in the audience. Dr. Hardegree is here, Dr. Egan.  
12 Dr. Patriarca can stay. Dr. Burns I believe can stay  
13 as well.

14 I hope I'm not losing members of the  
15 Committee. We will be voting on the reports that we  
16 conducted.

17 EXECUTIVE SECRETARY CHERRY: I would ask  
18 all the members of the Committee to try to stay. We  
19 need these votes.

20 CHAIRPERSON FERRIERI: If anyone is  
21 leaving, could you please let me know? We have an  
22 official break here while we're getting the room  
23 cleared.

24 (Whereupon, the foregoing matter was  
25 concluded at 3:55 p.m.)

**NEAL R. GROSS**

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS  
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701